

COLLAR AND DANIELL'S FIRST YEAR LATIN

REVISED BY
THORNTON JENKINS*
HEAD MASTER, HIGH SCHOOL, MALDEN, MASSACHUSETTS



GINN AND COMPANY
BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

760
C 697
for
1918

PREFACE

The book that is placed in the hands of a pupil during his first year of the study of Latin should be simple and clear and interesting in its treatment of the language; it should teach with the utmost thoroughness those principles that it attempts to teach, but it should not attempt to teach to-day what may be taught more properly to-morrow; it should get the pupil into the reading of easy connected Latin as soon as possible, and for this purpose should supply a generous amount of material graded to his attainment; and it should never allow the pupil to leave the classroom without a reminder of the extent to which Latin is a part of his own language.

With these convictions the revision of Collar and Daniell's "First Year Latin" was undertaken. All these principles underlay the plan of "First Year Latin," but the unanimity with which they have been accepted since the publication of that text has made it possible in the revision so to extend their application as to produce what is in effect a new book.

The vocabulary has been made briefer and more Cæsarian. From the vocabularies of the lessons the pupil is asked to learn the meanings of some five hundred and seventy words. About ninety per cent of these words are included in the list of one thousand words which Professor Lodge¹ suggests should be learned before the end of the second year of the study of Latin. Over sixty per cent occur more than ten times in Cæsar. In the Selections for Reading the pupil has a chance to become acquainted casually with a wider vocabulary.

¹ Vocabulary of High School Latin.

A number of constructions which were taught in the original book have been omitted. With three exceptions the constructions included in the revision are those which Byrne¹ recommends for the first year. Similarly, the pupil is no longer required to learn uncommon forms which are not necessary for his second-year reading.

Increased attention has been given to derivatives. Related English words are often placed after the Latin words in the vocabularies of the lessons as well as in the general vocabulary. Everywhere in the reviews this important part of the study of Latin is kept constantly before the pupil. Suggestions are offered for the keeping of notebooks of English derivatives. The force of certain common prefixes and suffixes in the formation and meaning of Latin words is also explained.

Interspersed throughout the book there are ten Review Lessons, which take up the words and constructions previously taught. The machinery for drill has been further strengthened by a summary of the uses of nouns and of verbs, and by review questions touching upon the syntax, forms, derivatives, and principles of each lesson. These questions have been placed after the Selections for Reading, that they may be somewhat removed from the lessons they concern.

The treatment of the Essentials of Grammar has been made more useful by a comparison of English grammar with Latin grammar, and by the inclusion of Latin equivalents for the English illustrative words and phrases.

The material for reading has been somewhat changed, particularly by the omission of the Fables and Stories, and by the introduction of the Story of Perseus, of the simplified narrative of Cæsar's Campaign against the Helvetians, and of a number of pages from Eutropius. In all the selections the

¹ The Syntax of High School Latin.

syntāx has been made to conform with that taught in the lessons, so that the pupil may not be bothered or discouraged by unfamiliar constructions.

As an aid to the pupil's pronunciation, a mark of accent has been placed on the words in the vocabularies of the first eighteen lessons, and on declensions and conjugations, both in the text and in the Appendix.

Teachers who are familiar with "First Year Latin" will find that none of its well-known excellences have been sacrificed in the revision. There are, for example, the same short lessons, usually less than two pages in length. In the exercises the sentences for translation remain simple. Nowhere are many constructions brought within the limits of a single sentence. The exercises for translation from English into Latin are relatively shorter than those from Latin into English. The order in which the verb is developed and in which the various constructions are presented will be found the same, with a few exceptions. In the study of syntax the pupil is still led from the observation of model sentences to the deduction of usages and principles. Passages of connected Latin are introduced early and are of frequent occurrence throughout the lessons, and there is ample material for reading after the lessons have been completed. The content of the book is still such that it is possible for high-school classes to go through the lessons within thirty weeks.

The "Teacher's Manual," in addition to general directions and notes on each lesson, contains carefully graded sentences for sight reading and for the practice of the "direct method," as well as material for drill on English derivatives of the Latin words of the vocabularies.

It is hoped that teachers will find the numerous illustrations a help to them in familiarizing pupils with the life of the

Romans. The four plates in colors were made especially for this book by Mr. Arthur E. Becher after a careful study of all the phases of Roman life that they represent. As for the other pictures, half tones have been used where the subject could be made more realistic if reproduced directly from a photograph. In cases where line engravings seemed more suitable, drawings in the style of the early Italian engravings were made for the purpose by Mr. Thomas M. Cleland, Mr. W. A. Dwiggins, and Mr. Adrian J. Iorio. As a whole the illustrations are believed to be of a quality unexcelled in schoolbooks.

The reviser wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness to the suggestions received from Mr. Collar himself, who, before his death, had given considerable thought to the aim and scope of the revision. Indebtedness is also gratefully acknowledged to Professor Charles Knapp, of Barnard College, New York; to Mr. Herbert F. Hancox, of Lewis Institute, Chicago; and to Miss Grace I. Bridge and Miss Grace E. Jackson, of the Hyde Park High School, Chicago, for their helpful criticisms.

T. J.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR	I
TO THE BEGINNER IN LATIN: WHAT LATIN IS, AND WHY IT IS STUDIED. HOW TO STUDY LATIN	15
INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET, SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, ACCENT	19
 LESSON	
I. THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND VERBS. THE NOMINATIVE CASE USED AS SUBJECT	24
II. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE USED AS THE DIRECT OBJECT . . .	26
III. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJU- GATION	28
IV. THE GENITIVE CASE USED TO DENOTE POSSESSION . . .	30
V. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJU- GATION. CAUSAL CLAUSE WITH <i>Quod</i>	32
VI. THE DATIVE CASE USED AS THE INDIRECT OBJECT. THE ABLATIVE USED IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES TO SHOW PLACE WHERE	34
VII. THE FIRST DECLENSION. GENDER	36
FIRST REVIEW LESSON	38
VIII. THE SECOND DECLENSION	40
IX. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS . .	42
X. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF <i>Sum</i> . PREDICATE NOUN AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	44
XI. APPosition. <i>Cornēlia et Iūlia</i>	46
XII. THE SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN -er, -ir, -ius, AND -ium	48
XIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS END- ING IN -er. <i>Dē Graeciā</i>	50

LESSON

PAGE

XIV. THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF <i>Sum</i> . THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	52
SECOND REVIEW LESSON	54
XV. THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS	56
XVI. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER	58
XVII. PRINCIPAL PARTS. THE PERFECT STEM. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION. <i>Dē Sabīnīs</i>	60
XVIII. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, SECOND CONJUGATION. THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT	62
XIX. THE DEMONSTRATIVE <i>Is</i> . THE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF <i>Sum</i>	64
XX. THE INTERROGATIVE <i>Quis</i> . <i>Dē Deīs Rōmānōrum</i>	66
XXI. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, FUTURE, AND PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION	68
THIRD REVIEW LESSON	70
XXII. READING LESSON. <i>Dē Īcarō. Rōmānī prō Sociīs pugnant</i>	72
XXIII. THE THIRD DECLENSION	74
XXIV. THE THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN <i>-iō</i> . THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH. THE ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH	76
XXV. THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES EXPRESSING CAUSE	78
XXVI. THE THIRD DECLENSION: <i>i</i> -STEMS	80
XXVII. THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS	82
XXVIII. READING LESSON. <i>Horātius Pontem dēfendit. Dē Nātiō-nibus Eurōpae</i>	84
FOURTH REVIEW LESSON	86
XXIX. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION	88
XXX. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. <i>Conloquium</i>	90
XXXI. THE ABLATIVE OF TIME. <i>Laconic Speeches</i>	92

CONTENTS

ix

LESSON	PAGE
XXXII. THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS	94
XXXIII. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <i>Hic</i> AND <i>Ille</i> . PLACE FROM WHICH AND TO WHICH, IN NAMES OF TOWNS	96
XXXIV. READING LESSON. <i>Victōria 'Caesaris. Dē Caesare et Britannīs</i>	98
XXXV. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGA- TIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT	100
XXXVI. THE RELATIVE <i>Qui</i> FIFTH REVIEW LESSON	102
XXXVII. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF <i>Regō</i> AND <i>Capiō</i>	106
XXXVIII. THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	108
XXXIX. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. <i>Veturia,</i> <i>Māter Coriolānī. Dē Perseō</i>	110
XL. THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION	112
XLI. THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS. <i>Iup- piter Perseum servat</i>	114
XLII. THE FOURTH DECLENSION	116
XLIII. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES SIXTH REVIEW LESSON	118
XLIV. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -er OR -lis. THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE	122
XLV. READING LESSON. <i>Scipiō et Hannibal. Perseus Medū- sam quaerit</i>	124
XLVI. THE IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE	126
XLVII. THE FORMATION AND THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	128
XLVIII. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT	130

LESSON	PAGE
XLIX. READING LESSON. <i>A Letter from Pompeii.</i> Perseus Medūsam interficit	132
L. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE. PURPOSE CLAUSES WITH Ut AND Nē	134
LI. THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. SEQUENCE OF TENSES .	136
LII. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. RESULT CLAUSES. SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON	138 140
LIII. READING LESSON. Caesar Hostis vincit. Andromeda Filia Cēpheī	142
LIV. THE PERFECT AND THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. INDIRECT QUESTIONS	144
LV. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE . .	146
LVI. ADJECTIVES HAVING THE GENITIVE IN -ius . Mōnstrum appropinquat	148
LVII. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND AS COMPLEMENT . .	150
LVIII. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT. THE ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE. INDIRECT STATEMENTS . .	152
LIX. READING LESSON. Caesar in Conciliō dīcit. Perseus Cēpheō Andromedam reddit	156
LX. THE DEMONSTRATIVES Idem , Ipse , Iste . THE IRREGULAR VERB Possum	158
EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON	160
LXI. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. <i>The Nations of Gaul</i> . .	162
LXII. THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS. THE DATIVES OF PURPOSE AND REFERENCE	164
LXIII. THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS. THE IRREGULAR VERBS Volō , Nōlō , Mālō	166
LXIV. READING LESSON. <i>Belling the Cat.</i> Nasica and Ennius. Orgetorix and the Helvetians	168
LXV. PARTICIPLES	170
LXVI. READING LESSON. <i>Dicta Antiquōrum.</i> Orgetorix and the Helvetians (CONTINUED)	173
LXVII. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	175

CONTENTS

xi

LESSON	PAGE
LXVIII. THE GERUND. THE IRREGULAR VERB <i>Eō</i>	178
NINTH REVIEW LESSON	180
LXIX. THE GERUNDIVE. THE IRREGULAR VERB <i>Ferō</i>	182
LXX. READING LESSON. <i>The Helvetians leave their Territory</i>	184
LXXI. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. DEONENT VERBS	186
LXXII. TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH <i>Cum</i> . THE IRREGULAR VERB <i>Fiō</i>	188
LXXIII. READING LESSON. <i>Cæsar refuses the Helvetians Per- mission to go through the Roman Province</i>	190
LXXIV. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT INTRODUCED BY <i>Quod</i> . THE INDICATIVE IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES	192
LXXV. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS	194
TENTH REVIEW LESSON	196
SUMMARY: THE USES OF NOUNS AND VERBS	198
 SELECTIONS FOR READING:	
Cæsar: The Campaign against the Helvetians	201
Cæsar: The Story of the Aduatuci	206
Stories of Hercules	208
Stories of Ulysses	213
Eutropius: History of Rome	218
Stories from Roman History	223
REVIEW QUESTIONS	227
 APPENDIX I:	
Rules of Syntax	245
Formation of Latin Words	249
English Derivatives	251
 APPENDIX II:	
Declensions and Conjugations	253
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	287
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	331
INDEX	341

FIRST YEAR LATIN

ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

THE PARTS OF SPEECH

NOUNS

I. a. A *noun* is the name of a person, place, or thing : *boy, London, ship*; *puer, Londinium, nāvis*.

b. A *proper noun* is the name of a particular person, place, or thing : *Cornelia, Rome, Rhone*; *Cornēlia, Rōma, Rhodanus*.

c. A *common noun* is a name that may be applied to any one of a class of objects : *boy, city, day*; *puer, urbs, diēs*.

d. A *collective noun* is a name that may be applied to a group of objects, though itself in the singular number (xxiii) : *crowd, family*; *multitūdō, gēns*.

e. A *verbal noun* is the name of an action : *seeing, writing, to see, to write*; *videndī* (459), *scribendī, vidēre, scribēre*.

f. An *abstract noun* is the name of a quality or condition : *goodness, truth, poverty*; *bonitās, vēritās, paupertās*.

PRONOUNS

II. a. A *pronoun* is a word used to take the place of a noun or of another pronoun : *I, you, him, this, who*; *ego, tū, eum, hoc, qui*.

b. The noun (or pronoun) for which a pronoun stands is called its *antecedent* (from *antecēdere*, to go before). Thus, in the sentence *John goes to school, but he does not study*, the

noun *John* is the antecedent of *he*. The antecedent is especially common with a relative pronoun (*ii, d*). Neither in Latin nor in English does the antecedent necessarily stand in advance of its pronoun: *What he says, he believes, quod dicit, id crēdit.*

c. A *personal pronoun* shows by its form whether it stands (1) for the speaker: *I, we; ego, nōs*, that is, the *first person*; (2) for the person spoken to: *thou, you; tū, vōs*, that is, the *second person*; or (3) for the person or thing spoken of: *he, she, it, they; is, ea, id, eī*, that is, the *third person*.

d. A *relative pronoun* connects a subordinate clause, in which it stands, with the antecedent: *The book that you have is mine, liber quem habēs meus est*. The relative pronouns in English are *who, which, that, and as*; in Latin the relative is *qui*.

e. An *interrogative pronoun* is used to ask a question: *Who is walking in the garden? Quis in hortō ambulat?* The interrogative pronouns in English are *who, which, and what*; in Latin, *quis* and *uter*.

f. A *demonstrative pronoun* points out an object definitely: *this, that, these, those; hic, ille, hī, illi*.

g. An *indefinite pronoun* refers to an object indefinitely: *some, some one, any, any one; aliquis, quis*.

h. A *reflexive pronoun* refers back to the subject: *He blamed himself, sē culpāvit.*

ADJECTIVES

III. a. An *adjective* is a word used to qualify or limit a noun or a pronoun: *good book, beautiful moon, five girls; liber bonus, lūna pulchra, quīnque puellae.*

b. *A, an, and the*, really limiting adjectives, are sometimes called *articles*. *The* is the *definite article*, *a* or *an* the *indefinite article*. These articles are not used in Latin.

c. *Numeral adjectives* denote how many persons or things are under consideration. They are either *cardinal*, denoting how many: *one, two, three, four*; *ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor*; or *ordinal*, denoting which in order: *first, second, third, fourth*; *prīmus, secundus, tertius, quārtus*.

d. *Possessive adjectives* denote ownership: *my friend, our house*; *meus amīcus, nostra domus*. Possessive adjectives are frequently used as possessive pronouns.

e. The demonstrative pronouns, the indefinite pronouns, and the interrogative pronouns *which* and *what* may be used as adjectives, and are then called respectively *demonstrative adjectives*: *this book, that house*; *hic liber, illa domus*; *indefinite adjectives*: *some boys, aliquī puerī*; and *interrogative adjectives*: *Which way shall we go? Quā viā ibimus?*

f. Adjectives are often used as nouns: "The land of the free," *patria liberōrum*.

VERBS

IV. a. A *verb* is a word which can declare or assert something about a person, a place, or a thing: *The man laughs, vir ridet; the town is captured, oppidum captum est; the leaf falls, folium cadit.*

b. A verb which has an object (xiv, a) to complete its meaning is said to be *transitive*, or to be *used transitively*: *The girl has a rose, puella rosam habet.*

c. A verb which does not have an object (xiv, a) to complete its meaning is said to be *intransitive*, or to be *used intransitively*: *Birds fly, avēs volant; I walk, ambulō.*

NOTE. Thus certain verbs may at one time be transitive and at another intransitive: *The wind blew the snow into our faces; the wind blew furiously.*

d. Verbs are classified as *regular* or *irregular*. This distinction is made merely for convenience. A *regular verb* in English forms its imperfect (past) tense (xxxiii, *a*) and past participle (xxxiv, *b*) by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the present: present, *love*; past, *loved*; past participle, *loved*. For Latin regular verbs see 658–662.

e. An *irregular verb* in English does not form its imperfect (past) tense by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the present: present, *give*; past, *gave*; past participle, *given*. For Latin irregular verbs see 663–668.

f. An *auxiliary verb* is used in the conjugation of other verbs: *I am loved, he has given*. In Latin the verb *esse, to be* (663), is so used: *missus est, he has been sent*.

ADVERBS

V. *a.* An *adverb* is used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb: *He walks swiftly, celeriter ambulat*.

b. An *adverb of place* answers the question *where?* — *here, there, hence; hic, illic, hinc*.

c. An *adverb of time* answers the question *when?* — *then, now, often; tum, nunc, saepe*.

d. An *adverb of manner* answers the question *how?* — *so, well, ill; sic, bene, male*.

e. An *adverb of degree* answers the question *how much?* — *little, almost, enough; paulō, paene, satis*.

f. A *modal adverb* expresses affirmation or negation, or the degree of confidence with which a statement is made: *yes, no, certainly, perhaps; certē, forsitan*.

PREPOSITIONS

VI. A preposition is used before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to another word in the sentence. Usually the relation shown is position, direction, or time : *He sent a legion against the enemy, in hostēs legiōnem mīsit.* In Latin certain phrases which would be introduced in English by a preposition are expressed by the use of one of the cases (xxiv, b) without a preposition : *At dawn he sent a legion, pīmā lūce legiōnem mīsit.*

CONJUNCTIONS

VII. a. A *conjunction* connects words, phrases (xvi), clauses (xx), and sentences (xviii) : *boys and girls, puerī et puellae; they fought bravely but were conquered, fortiter pugnāvērunt sed victī sunt.*

b. A *coördinate conjunction* connects words, phrases, clauses, and sentences of equal order or rank. The conjunctions in the examples in VII, a are coördinate.

c. A *subordinate conjunction* connects a subordinate clause (xx, a) with a principal clause (xx, a) : *The boy was praised because he was industrious, puer laudātus est quod impiger erat.*

INTERJECTIONS

VIII. An *interjection* is used to express strong feeling. It is not grammatically related to any other word in the sentence : *oh! ah! alas! hurrah! ēheu! ecce!*

NOTE. The following couplets have often proved useful to young persons in identifying the parts of speech :

Three little words we often see
Are Articles, *a, an, and the.*

A Noun's the name of anything;
As *school or garden, hoop or swing.*

Adjectives tell the kind of noun ;
As *great, small, pretty, white, or brown.*

Instead of nouns the Pronouns stand ;
I come, you go, as they command.

Verbs tell of something being done ;
As *read, write, spell, sing, jump, or run.*

How things are done the Adverbs tell ;
As *slowly, quickly, ill, or well.*

They also tell us where and when ;
As *here and there and now and then.*

A Preposition stands before
A noun ; as *in or through* a door.

Conjunctions join the words together ;
As rain *and* sunshine, wind *or* weather.

Conjunctions sentences unite ;
As kittens scratch *and* puppies bite.

An Interjection shows surprise ;
As *Oh ! how pretty ! Ah ! how wise !*

THE SENTENCE

IX. A *sentence* is a word or a group of words expressing a thought : *Stars shine ; he walks ; stellae lūcent ; ambulat.*

X. a. A *declarative sentence* declares or asserts something : *The farmers are plowing the fields, agricolae agrōs arant.*

b. An *interrogative sentence* asks a question : *Why are the farmers plowing the fields ? Cūr agricolae agrōs arant ?*

c. An *imperative sentence* expresses a command, a request, or an entreaty : *Plow the fields to-day, hodiē agrōs arāte.*

d. An *exclamatory sentence* expresses strong feeling or emotion : *Would that he had remained ! Utinam mānsisset !*

XI. *a.* A sentence is made up of two parts, one called the *subject* and the other the *predicate*.

b. The *subject* represents the person, place, or thing about which something is declared or asserted: *Birds sing, avēs cantant.*

c. The *predicate* declares or asserts something about the person, place, or thing which the subject represents: *Birds sing, avēs cantant.*

NOTE. In English and in Latin either the subject or the predicate, or both, may be enlarged to any extent by the addition of qualifying words and expressions called modifiers: *My sister's small birds | sing sweetly in the morning.*

XII. The *simple subject* is the noun or pronoun which signifies the person, place, or thing about which the assertion is made. The *simple predicate* is the verb that makes the assertion. *Birds* is the simple subject, and *sing* the simple predicate, in the note under XI, *c.*

XIII. The *complete subject* is the simple subject with all its modifiers. The *complete predicate* is the simple predicate with all its modifiers. Thus, in the example in the note under XI, *c* the complete subject is all that precedes the vertical line, and the complete predicate all that follows it.

XIV. *a.* The *object* of a verb is a word or an expression that completes the meaning of the verb, and signifies that which is affected by the action: *He sent messengers, nūntiōs mīsit; he wished me to go to Italy, mē in Italiam īre voluit.*

b. The *direct object* represents that which is immediately affected by the action of the verb; the *indirect object* that to or for which the action is performed. Thus, in *He gave me a book, mihi librum dedit*, *book* is the direct object, and *me* the indirect.

XV. *a.* A *predicate noun* or a *predicate adjective* is used after certain intransitive or passive verbs to complete their meaning, and to describe or define the subject: *Marcus is a sailor*; *the sailor is brave*; *Mārcus nauta est*; *nauta fortis est*.

b. The predicate noun or adjective is called the *complement* of the verb. Intransitive verbs that require a complement are called *copulative verbs*. The verb *be* (Latin *esse*) in its various forms (*am, was, has been, etc.*) is often called the *copula*.

c. The predicate noun or adjective has the same case as the subject; hence the term *predicate nominative*.

XVI. *a.* A *phrase* is a combination of words (not subject and predicate) used as a single part of speech.

b. An *adjective phrase* modifies a noun: *A man of great valor, vir magnae virtūtis*.

c. An *adverbial phrase* modifies a verb: *They work with great diligence, magnā cum diligentiā labōrant*. In Latin certain cases of nouns are used to express what in English would be prepositional phrases of an adverbial nature (vi).

XVII. A *simple sentence* contains but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: *Cæsar drew up a line of battle, Caesar aciem instrūxit*.

XVIII. A *compound sentence* contains two or more independent statements: *Cæsar drew up a line of battle, but the enemy fled, Caesar aciem instrūxit, sed hostēs fūgērunt*.

NOTE. An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend on (qualify or limit) another statement.

XIX. A *complex sentence* contains one independent (principal) statement and one or more dependent (subordinate)

statements : *When the messenger had replied, the lieutenant spoke as follows, cum nūntius respondisset, lēgātus haec dixit.*

NOTE. A dependent, or subordinate, statement is one that qualifies or limits another in some way ; thus, the dependent statement *when the messenger had replied* limits the verb *spoke*, telling when the lieutenant spoke.

XX. *a.* The separate statements in a compound or a complex sentence are called *clauses*, and, as has already been seen, they may be either *independent (principal)* or *dependent (subordinate)*.

b. When dependent (subordinate) clauses modify nouns or pronouns they are called *adjective clauses* : *The girls whom we praised were good, puellae quās laudāvimus bonae erant.*

c. When dependent (subordinate) clauses modify verbs they are called *adverbial clauses* : *When the messenger had replied, the lieutenant spoke as follows, cum nūntius respondisset, lēgātus haec dixit.*

d. When dependent (subordinate) clauses are used as nouns they are called *substantive clauses* : *That you are here pleases us, quod ades nōs dēlectat.*

e. Dependent (subordinate) clauses introduced by *when* (Latin *cum*, *ubi*, etc.) are called *temporal clauses* ; introduced by *because* (Latin *quod* etc.), they are called *causal clauses* ; introduced by *if* (Latin *sī*), they are called *conditional clauses* ; introduced by *although* (Latin *cum*, *etsī*, etc.), they are called *concessive clauses* ; introduced by a relative pronoun (Latin *qui*), they are called *relative clauses*.

f. The independent clause of a complex sentence is called the *principal clause*. Connected clauses that are of the same rank, both independent or both dependent, are said to be *coördinate*.

INFLECTION

XXI. *Inflection* is a change in the form of a word to indicate a change in its meaning or use: *man, men, boy, boy's, love, loved; vir, viri, puer, pueri, amant, amabant.*

DECLENSION

XXII. The inflection of a noun or pronoun is called its *declension*. Nouns and pronouns in English are declined to show number and case, and a few nouns to show gender. In Latin the nouns and pronouns are declined; adjectives also are declined in gender, number, and case to agree with the nouns which they modify.

Number

XXIII. A noun or pronoun is in the *singular number* when it means one person, place, or thing: *town, city, I; oppidum, urbs, ego*; in the *plural number* when it means more than one person, place, or thing: *towns, cities, we; oppida, urbēs, nōs.*

Case

XXIV. a. The several forms taken by words that are declined are called *cases*. In English there are the following cases, to indicate the uses of nouns and pronouns:

1. The *nominative*, primarily used as the subject of a sentence: *He throws the ball.*
2. The *possessive* (genitive), used to denote possession or ownership: *John throws his ball; see the queen's crown.*
3. The *objective* (accusative), used as the object of a transitive verb or of a preposition: *John throws the ball to him.*
4. The *dative*, used to express the indirect object of the verb: *John throws him the ball.* Only personal pronouns and the pronoun *who* have separate forms for these cases in English.

Nouns have the nominative, objective, and dative alike, with a separate form for the possessive.

b. In Latin there are seven cases: *nominative, genitive, dative; accusative, ablative, vocative, and locative*; but a single form sometimes does duty for several cases (cf. *agricola*, 63). The nominative, genitive, and accusative cases are used much like the same cases in English. The dative expresses in general that relation of words to other words which is expressed in English by prepositional phrases beginning with *to* or *for*: *to the farmer, for the man*. The ablative expresses in general that relation of words to other words which is expressed in English by prepositional phrases beginning with *from, with, by, in*: *with a spear, by a story*.

c. The direct object of a verb in Latin is in the accusative case, but sometimes the direct object in English is expressed in Latin by the dative (425, 433).

Gender

XXV. a. The gender of English nouns is what is called *natural gender*, and hence has very little to do with grammar. Thus, a noun denoting a male is in the *masculine gender*: *man, boy, father*; a noun denoting a female is in the *feminine gender*: *woman, girl, mother*; one denoting either male or female is in the *common gender*: *cat, dog, parent*; one denoting a sexless object is in the *neuter gender*: *river, wind, mountain*.

b. In Latin only nouns that denote persons and some animals have natural gender: *nauta, sailor* (masc.); *māter, mother* (fem.). All others have an arbitrary gender, called *grammatical gender*, determined chiefly by the ending: *flūmen, river* (neut.); *ventus, wind* (masc.); *nūbēs, cloud* (fem.).

COMPARISON

XXVI. *a.* English adjectives and adverbs are inflected to show degree. This is called *comparison*. There are three degrees of comparison, the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*: positive *wise*, comparative *wiser*, superlative *wisest*; positive *good*, comparative *better*, superlative *best*; positive *often*, comparative *oftener*, superlative *oftenest*.

b. Adjectives and adverbs are also compared in English by prefixing the adverbs *more* and *most*: *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

c. Comparison in Latin is indicated exactly as in English: *sapiēns*, *sapientior*, *sapientissimus*; *bonus*, *melior*, *optimus*; *idōneus*, *magis idōneus*, *maximē idōneus*; *saepe*, *saepius*, *saepissimē*.

CONJUGATION

XXVII. *a.* The inflection of a verb is called *conjugation*. Verbs are conjugated to show voice, mood, and tense, and the number and person of the subject.

b. The English verb has but few changes of form. Thus the verb *love* has in common use only the forms *love*, *loves*, *loving*, and *loved*. Most of the conjugation of the verb is made up of verb phrases formed by the use of auxiliaries (IV, f): *I am loved*, *I shall love*, *I shall have been loved*, etc.

c. The Latin verb has many changes in form to show voice, mood, tense, number, and person: *amor*, *I am loved*; *amābō*, *I shall love*; *amātus erō*, *I shall have been loved*.

Voice

XXVIII. A verb is in the *active voice* when it represents the subject as acting (or being): *The man praised the boy*, *vir puerum laudāvit*. A verb is in the *passive voice* when it represents the subject as acted on: *The boy was praised by the man*, *puer ā virō laudātus est*.

Mood

XXIX. A verb is in the *indicative mood* when it is used in stating a fact or in asking a question: *The citizens are assembling, cīvēs conveniunt; why do they carry arms? cūr arma portant?*

XXX. a. In English a verb is in the *subjunctive mood* when it asserts something doubtfully or conditionally. It is used in subordinate clauses, and is usually introduced by *if*, *though*, and the like: *If he were here, I should be glad; Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.*"

NOTE. The subjunctive is very little used in modern English, its place being taken by the indicative.

b. In Latin the subjunctive has a great variety of uses, in independent as well as in dependent clauses (344, 358, 373, etc.).

XXXI. a. A verb is in the *imperative mood* when it expresses command, request, or entreaty: *Fortify the city, urbem mūnite.*

b. Unless emphatic the subject of the imperative (*thou* or *you*) is not expressed either in English or in Latin.

The Infinitive

XXXII. a. The *infinitive* in English (*to love, to have loved, etc.*) is a verbal noun. It has neither person nor number. Like a noun it may be the subject or the object or the complement of a verb: *To see is to believe; he wishes to go home.* Like a verb it may have a subject, an object, and adverbial modifiers: *We wish you to begin your work early.*

b. The Latin infinitive is used in the same way that the English infinitive is used. It differs, however, from the English infinitive in not being used in prose in expressions of purpose (*They came to see me*), and in being used constantly for the verb of a statement that is given indirectly: *He said that he would come, dixit se ventūrum esse.*

c. The verbal noun in *-ing* is sometimes called an infinitive : *Seeing is believing = to see is to believe.* This verbal noun has its counterpart in the Latin gerund (459).

Tense

XXXIII. a. A verb is in the *present, past (imperfect), or future* tense according as it represents an action as taking place in present, past, or future time : *I love, I loved (was loving), I shall love ; amō, amābam, amābō.*

b. The *present perfect (perfect)* tense represents an action completed in the present : *I have loved, amāvī*; the *past perfect (pluperfect)* an action completed in the past before some other past action or state : *I had loved, amāveram*; and the *future perfect* an action completed in the future before some other future action or state : *I shall have loved, amāverō.*

The Participle

XXXIV. a. The *participle* is a verbal adjective. Like an adjective it may qualify a noun : *struggling soldiers, militēs labōrantes.* Like a verb it may have an object and adverbial modifiers : *Fearing danger they remained in the camp, periculum veritī in castrīs mānsērunt.*

b. There are in English three participles in the active voice : present, *loving*; past, *loved*; perfect, *having loved*; and three in the passive voice : present, (*being*) *loved*; past, *loved*; perfect, *having been loved*. In Latin the past and perfect active and the present passive participles are wanting, but there is a future participle.

c. The participle in *-ing* is used with the auxiliary *be* to make the progressive form of the verb : *you are loving, he was loving, they will be loving.* Latin has no special tenses for the progressive forms.

TO THE BEGINNER IN LATIN

What Latin is. Latin is the language that was used by the ancient Romans. It gets its name from the *Lati'ni*, a little tribe living in western Italy more than twenty-five hundred years ago. The Latini, and their successors, the Romans, slowly extended their lands and their power until they gained control of all Italy, and finally of all the civilized world of those days. Their dominions reached from the Atlantic Ocean to Persia and from the Baltic Sea to the deserts of Africa, and their language was spoken wherever they ruled. For about six hundred years the Romans were the most powerful nation on the earth. Their history covers in all a period of twelve centuries ; no nation has had a longer history.

Why Latin is studied. And now why is it that it is worth your while to study a language that is so many centuries old ?

First, a knowledge of Latin helps you to use English more correctly. As more than half the words in the English language are of Latin origin, you yourself in a sense speak Latin to-day. There are the words of your everyday talk, like *animal* ; there are the learned words, like *emancipate* ; there are the terms of law, of medicine, and of the sciences, like *mandamus*, *delirium*, and *antennae* ; and there are the words which are newly come into use, like *tractor*. If you study Latin, you will be helped to know the meaning of many of these words, how to spell them, and how to use them correctly ; all of which is quite worth your while, particularly if you are intending to enter one of the professions.

Again, the study of Latin will train your mind. Latin is somewhat unlike English in the form of its words and much

unlike English in the order of the words in its sentences. You will therefore be obliged to look carefully, and to think carefully, and to speak carefully whenever you try to read and to translate anything written in Latin. But this close attention will do good to your mind : it will train your powers of observation, of clear thinking, and of clear expression ; in fact, no other subject that you study in school can do as much for you as can Latin toward developing these desirable powers.

Furthermore, the reading of Latin will add to your information. If you are to be a well-informed person, you will need to know something about Rome and the Romans, and what they have meant in the history of the world ; and in no other way can you better come to know and to appreciate the literature, the life, the customs, and the civilization of the Romans than by the faithful study of their language and of the things written in that language.

How to study Latin. 1. Never allow yourself to think that Latin is not worth your best efforts or that it is too hard for you. Industry and confidence will bring you success in this study.

2. Have a fixed hour each day for the study of your Latin. If possible, prepare your lesson for to-morrow immediately after reciting the lesson of to-day. Your interest will then be greater and your mind better fitted to grasp the subject.

3. Learn each day's lesson with thoroughness. Neglect no part of the lesson even if it seems to you unimportant.

4. Before beginning a new lesson recall what you have already learned about the subject to be taught in the new lesson. For example, if you are about to study a new use of one of the cases, recall all the uses of that case which you have previously learned.

5. Review the vocabularies regularly. A knowledge of the meanings of the words will be a great saving of time to you, as well as a constant encouragement. Aim to know every word

you have met, and to this end keep lists of words about the meaning of which you are doubtful.

6. Recite the declensions and the conjugations by yourself aloud. It will help you to remember them, and you will make better recitations. Read the Latin sentences aloud each day.

7. Go over the new lesson slowly, and thus avoid mistakes in the spelling of words, in their endings, and in the explanation of Latin constructions.

8. Recall your English grammar when you are learning Latin constructions; most of the Latin usages that you will learn in your first year are like English usages.

9. Study the lessons as a whole. Then go back to special difficulties. Go over the lesson again just before the recitation and consider the troublesome parts.



INTRODUCTION

ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet has no *j* or *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.
2. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u**. The other letters are consonants.
3. The letter **i** is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the force of a consonant and is called *i-consonant*. Thus in *iaciō*, *I throw*, the first **i** is a consonant, and the second a vowel.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS¹

4. The vowels are either long or short. In this book the long vowels are marked (-); unmarked vowels are to be regarded as short. The vowels are sounded as follows:

ā like the last <i>a</i> in <i>aha'</i>	ă like the first <i>a</i> in <i>aha'</i>
ē like <i>e</i> in <i>they</i>	ĕ like <i>e</i> in <i>met</i>
ī like <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i>	ĭ like <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i>
ō like <i>o</i> in <i>note</i>	ŏ like <i>o</i> in <i>obey</i>
ū like <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i>	ŭ like <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i>

5. The diphthongs are sounded as follows:

æ like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i>	✓ eu like <i>eu</i> in <i>feud</i>
au like <i>ou</i> in <i>our</i>	oe like <i>oi</i> in <i>boil</i>
ei like <i>ei</i> in <i>eight</i>	ui like <i>we</i>

¹ Latin is pronounced to-day substantially as it was pronounced by the Romans at the beginning of the Christian era.

6.. The consonants generally have the same sound as the corresponding consonants in English. But there are the following exceptions :

c is like c in *come*

g is like g in *get*

i-consonant is like y in *yet*

s is like s in *sun*

t is like t in *time*

v is like w in *wine*

x is like x in *extra*

a sent
bs and bt are like ps and pt

ch is like k in *kite*

gu, qu, and sometimes su before a vowel are like gw, qw, and sw (u is not counted as a vowel)

ph is like p

th is like t

When a consonant is doubled (as ll), it should be pronounced twice.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

7. 1. sum, tum. 2. cum, dum. 3. ad, id. 4. in, an. 5. at, et, ut. 6. hic, hic, hāc. 7. hōc, hūc. 8. hoc, num. 9. is, bis, īs. 10. dīc, dūc. 11. fac, fer. 12. aut, hae. 13. ē, ā, ī. 14. ex, ab, ob. 15. dō, dā, dē. 16. pāx, dux. 17. nox, vōx. 18. pars, sōl. 19. trēs, mōs. 20. quō, quā. 21. iūs, qui. 22. quae, quīn. 23. quis, sē. 24. mē, tē. 25. gēns, sīc. 26. vel, vir, iam.

SYLLABLES

8. A syllable consists of a vowel or a diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs : *ō-ce'-a-nus*, *ocean*.

9. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant between two vowels is joined with the vowel following : *lā-ti-tū'-dō*, *width*.

10. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, the first is pronounced with the preceding vowel : *im-mor-tā'-lis*, *immortal*.

But a consonant followed by *l* or *r* is pronounced with the *l* or *r*, except in *ll* and *rr*: *pū'-bli-cus*, *public*; when *ll* or *rr* occurs, one *l* or one *r* is joined to the preceding syllable, and the other to the following syllable: *ter'-ra*, *land*.

Compound words are divided in such a way as to show the component parts: *ab'-est* (*ab*, *away*, + *est*, *he is*), *he is away*.

11. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the one next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

12. A vowel is generally short before another vowel or *h*: *pō-ē'-ma*, *poem*; *nī'-hil*, *nothing*.

13. A vowel is generally short before *nt* or *nd*, and before final *m* or final *t*: *vō'-cānt*, *they call*; *vo-cā'-bām*, *I was calling*.

14. A vowel is long before *nf* or *ns*: *a'-māns*, *loving*. *~*

15. A vowel resulting from the contraction of two vowels is long: *cō'-gō* (*co-agō*), *I bring together*.

16. The quantity of vowels other than those mentioned in the preceding sections must be learned by observation.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

17. A syllable is *long by nature* when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: *vic-tō'-ri-a*, *victory*; *prae'-mi-um*, *reward*.

18. A syllable is *short by nature* when it does not contain a long vowel or a diphthong: *o-pi'-ni-ō*, *opinion*.

19. A syllable is *long by position* when it has a short vowel followed by *x* or *z*, or by two or more consonants, unless these two consonants are *p*, *b*, *t*, *d*, *c*, *g*, followed by *l* or *r*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: *dē-trī-men'-tum*, *loss*. *✓*

ACCENT

20. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first syllable: *pa'-ter*, *father*.

21. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when it is long, otherwise on the antepenult: *dē-mōn-strā'-re*, *to point out*; *ce-le'-ri-tās*, *swiftness*; *ē-ven'-tus*, *outcome* (cf. 19).

22. Several words, of which the commonest are *-ne*, the sign of a question, and *-que*, *and*, are appended to other words. The words so appended are known as enclitics. The words to which they are appended are accented on the syllable preceding the enclitic, whether that syllable is long or short: *a-mat'-ne?* *does he love?* *ar-mă'-que*, *and arms*.

EXERCISE IN ACCENT AND PRONUNCIATION

23. Divide the following words into syllables, state the rule for the accent, and then pronounce:

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. dīvidunt, appellāre | 6. causīs, praecēdō |
| 2. īstitūtis, differēbāmūs | 7. finis, prohibitus |
| 3. hūmānitātē, prōvinciā | 8. initiō, persuāserāmus |
| 4. longus, animōs | 9. tempora, magistrātūm |
| 5. importābunt, bellum | 10. frāternus, conloquium |

24. The following Latin version of "Twinkle, Twinkle, Little Star" may be used for practice in pronunciation, and for illustration of the preceding statements about syllables, accent, etc.:

MICĀ, MICĀ

Micā, micā, parva stella !
 Mīror quaenam sis, tam bella !
 Splendēns ēminus in illō,
 Alba velut gemma, caelō.

Quandō fervēns Sōl discessit,
 Nec calōre prāta pāscit,
 Mox ostendis lūmen pūrum,
 Micāns, micāns per obscūrum.

Tibi noctū quī vagātur
 Ob scintillulam grātātur ;
 Nī micārēs tū, nōn scīret
 Quās per viās errāns īret.

Meum saepe thalamum lūce
 Speculāris cūriōsā ;
 Neque carpseris sopōrem
 Dōnec vēnit Sōl per auram.



THE ARCH OF TITUS, SHOWING A ROMAN INSCRIPTION

LESSON I

THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND VERBS THE NOMINATIVE CASE USED AS SUBJECT

25. The Singular and Plural of Nouns and Verbs.

NOUN	VERB
<i>Nom. Sing.</i> agricola, farmer	<i>3d Pers. Sing.</i> labōrat, works,
<i>Nom. Plur.</i> agricolae, farmers	<i>is working, does work</i>
	<i>3d Pers. Plur.</i> labōrant, work,
	<i>are working, do work</i>

a. Observe that the distinction between the singular and the plural is shown by the final letters of the noun and of the verb. These final letters of a noun are called *case endings*; the final letters of a verb are called *personal endings*.

b. Form the nominative plural of the nouns in the vocabulary, and the third person plural of the verbs.

26.

VOCABULARY

agri'cola, farmer (<i>agriculture</i>)	appropin'quat, approaches, draws near (<i>propinquity</i>)
Cornē'lia, Cornelia	can'tat, sings (<i>incantation</i>)
Iū'lia, Julia	labō'rat, works, labors, suffers (<i>laboratory</i>)
nau'ta, sailor (<i>nautical</i>)	na'tat, swims (<i>natatorium</i>)
puel'la, girl	quis, interrog. pron., who?
et, conj., and	quid, interrog. pron., what?
-ne, enclitic, sign of a question	
am'bulat, walks (<i>perambulate</i>)	

27. The Nominative Case used as Subject.

1. Puella cantat, *the girl sings (is singing, does sing)*.
2. Puellae cantant, *the girls sing (are singing, do sing)*.
3. Cantatne puella, *does the girl sing (is the girl singing) ?*
4. Cantantne puellae, *do the girls sing (are the girls singing) ?*

a. In Latin there is no article (III, b): *puella* may be translated *girl*, *a girl*, or *the girl*; and *puellae*, *girls* or *the girls*.

b. What is the subject (xi, b) of each of the model sentences, and what is the predicate (xi, c)? In what case is the subject of a Latin verb (xxiv)?

c. Observe that the verbs agree with their subjects in number.

d. Observe that *-ne* is not separately translated. Usually it is attached to the emphatic word in the sentence, and the emphasized word is placed first. When an interrogative word is used, *-ne* is omitted: see sentence 11 below. In English *-ne* is represented on the printed page by the question mark, and in oral translation by the inflection of the voice.

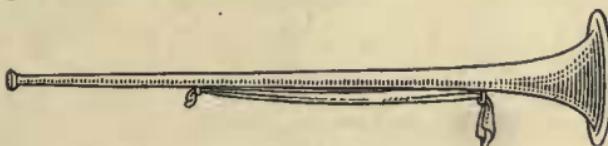
28. Rule for the Nominative Case as Subject. *The subject of a verb is in the nominative case.*

29. Rule for the Agreement of the Verb with its Subject. *A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

EXERCISES

30. 1. *Nauta cantat.* 2. *Nautae cantant.* 3. *Agricola labōrat.* 4. *Agricolae labōrant.* 5. *Puella natat.* 6. *Puellae natant.* 7. *Cornēlia appropinquat.* 8. *Puellaene appropinquant?* 9. *Cornēlia et puellae cantant.* 10. *Iūlia labōrat et cantat.* 11. *Quid appropinquat?* 12. *Labōrantne nautae?* 13. *Quis ambulat?*

31. 1. The sailor is swimming. 2. The girls are singing. 3. Who approaches? 4. Are the sailors approaching? 5. Does Cornelius sing? 6. Cornelius and Julia are walking and singing. 7. The girl sings, and the farmer works. 8. Sailors and farmers are working.



TUBA

LESSON II

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE USED AS THE DIRECT OBJECT

32. The Accusative Case used as the Direct Object.

1. *Nauta puellam vocat, the sailor calls the girl.*
2. *Nautae puellās vocant, the sailors call the girls.*

a. Observe that **puellam** is the object (xiv, a) of **vocat**, and **puellās** of **vocant**; and that when a Latin noun is used as the object, the case ending is not the same as when it is the subject and so in the nominative. The case of the object in Latin is called *accusative* (xxiv) and not objective, as in English.

b. Form the accusative singular and plural of the nouns in sections 26 and 34.

33. *Rule for the Accusative as the Direct Object. The object of a verb is in the accusative case.*

34.

VOCABULARY

a'qua , water (<i>aquatic</i>)	con'vocat , calls together (<i>convvoke</i>)
Gal'ba , Galba	ha'bet , has, holds (<i>habit</i>)
lit'tera , letter (of the alphabet); <i>plur.</i> , a letter, epistle (<i>literary</i>)	lau'dat , praises (<i>laud</i>)
ter'ra , land (<i>terrace</i>)	vi'det , sees (<i>provide</i>)
tu'ba , trumpet (<i>tuba</i>)	quem , acc. of <i>quis</i> , whom?
a'mat , loves, likes (<i>amateur</i>)	quid , acc. of quid , what?
	nunc , adv., now

35. *Order of Words.* Observe that in the model sentences (32) the order of Latin words is unlike the order of the words in the English sentences. The normal position of the subject of a Latin sentence is at the beginning; that of the verb is at the end. Variations from this order put emphasis on the word moved toward the beginning of the sentence; thus, **puellam nauta vocat** means that the sailor calls *a girl*. In translating Latin sentences put the emphasis where it belongs.

EXERCISES

36. 1. Galba tubām habet. 2. Tubāsne habet Galba? 3. Pueri lae Cornēliam et Iūliam laudant. 4. Litterās nauta videt. 5. Nautās Galba convocat. 6. Quis Galbam videt? 7. Quem videt Galba? 8. Agricola puerās nunc convocat. 9. Videntne nautae terram? 10. Cornēliam pueriae amant.

37. 1. Who is approaching? 2. The sailor and Galba are approaching. 3. What has the farmer? 4. The farmer has land. 5. Does Galba praise the farmers? 6. The girl sees the water and the land. 7. The sailors call together the farmers. 8. Julia now has the letter.



A SCENE IN A ROMAN STREET

LESSON III

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

38. The Four Conjugations. Regular verbs in Latin are divided into four classes, or conjugations (xxvii), distinguished from one another by the stem vowel before the ending -re of the present infinitive active.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL
<i>First Conj.</i> amā're	amā-	ā
<i>Second Conj.</i> monē're	monē-	ē
<i>Third Conj.</i> re'gere	rege-	ĕ
<i>Fourth Conj.</i> audi're	audi-	i

39. The Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation.

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
<i>1st Pers.</i> a'mō, <i>I love, am loving, do love</i>	-ō, <i>I</i>
<i>2d Pers.</i> a'mās, <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>	-s, <i>you</i>
<i>3d Pers.</i> a'mat, <i>he, she, it loves, is loving, does love</i>	-t, <i>he, she, it</i>
PLURAL	
<i>1st Pers.</i> amā'mus, <i>we love, are loving, do love</i>	-mus, <i>we</i>
<i>2d Pers.</i> amā'tis, <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>	-tis, <i>you</i>
<i>3d Pers.</i> a'mant, <i>they love, are loving, do love</i>	-nt, <i>they</i>

a. Observe that in *amō* the final a of the stem disappears, giving *amō* instead of *amaō*. In what forms is this a of the stem not long (13)?

b. When the subject of a verb is a personal pronoun, it is seldom expressed in Latin unless emphatic. Why is the omission of the subject possible? Translate *puellās convocātis* and *nautam vident*.

c. Inflect like *amō* the present indicative active of *ambulō*, *appro-pinquō*, *cantō*, *convocō*, *labōrō*, *laudō*, and *natō*.

40.

VOCABULARY

dō, pres. stem dă- (<i>the a of dō is regularly short, but long in dās</i>), give (<i>dative</i>)	sae'pe, adv., often sed, conj., but spec'tō, pres. stem spectā-, look at (<i>spectator</i>)
in'cola, inhabitant	

EXERCISES

41. 1. Ambulat, convocat, cantat. 2. Convocantne? cantantne? laudantne? 3. Natās, labōrās, ambulās. 4. Amāmus, appropinquāmus, ambulāmus. 5. Convocātis, cantātis, amātis. 6. Amant, dat, laudāmus. 7. Quem spectās? 8. Incolās laudō. 9. Iūliam saepe laudātis. 10. Sed litterās laudāmus. 11. Quid nunc datis?

42. 1. I swim, he swims, I am swimming. 2. Are you working? we sing, does she praise? 3. They are approaching, they give, you walk. 4. You are praising, they swim, he does labor. 5. We call together the inhabitants, but you call together the sailors. 6. The girls are now looking at the water.



RUINS OF A ROMAN AQUEDUCT

LESSON IV

THE GENITIVE CASE USED TO DENOTE POSSESSION

43. The Genitive Case used to denote Possession.

1. *Filiae Galbae cantant*, *the daughters of Galba sing*, or *Galba's daughters sing*.
2. *Filiās nautārum laudāmus*, *we praise the daughters of the sailors*, or *we praise the sailors' daughters*.

a. Observe that **Galbae** modifies **filiae** and tells whose daughters are singing. In the same way **nautārum** modifies **filiās** and tells whose daughters we are praising. This usage of **Galbae** and of **nautārum** is like that of the English possessive case (xxiv, a, 2). In Latin the case thus used is called the *genitive* (xxiv, b), and this usage of that case is called the *Genitive of Possession*.

b. Observe the case endings of the genitive. Form the genitive singular and the genitive plural of the nouns in sections 26, 34, and 45.

c. Note the translations given to the genitives in the model sentences. Translate **filia agricolae** and **filiāe agricolārum**.

d. The genitive normally stands after the word it modifies.

44. Rule for the Genitive of Possession. *The word denoting the owner or possessor is in the genitive case.*

45.

VOCABULARY

fē'mina , woman (<i>feminine</i>)	exspec'tō , <i>pres. stem exspectā-</i> , wait,
fi'lia , daughter (<i>filial</i>)	wait for (<i>expect</i>)
fortū'na , fortune (<i>fortunate</i>)	fu'gō , <i>pres. stem fugā-</i> , put to flight,
poē'ta , poet (<i>poetic</i>)	rout
rēgī'na , queen	lī'berō , <i>pres. stem liberā-</i> , set free,
cu'ius , gen. of <i>quis</i> and of <i>quid</i> , of whom? whose? of what?	free (<i>liberate</i>)
dēlec'tō , <i>pres. stem dēlectā-</i> , delight, please (<i>delectable</i>)	por'tō , <i>pres. stem portā-</i> , carry, bring (<i>portable</i>)
	et'iam , <i>adv.</i> , even

EXERCISES

46. 1. Dēlectat, fugāmus, liberās. 2. Exspectāmus, portant, dēlectās. 3. Dēlectāmus, fugātis, liberant. 4. Liberatne? liberō, portāmus. 5. Filiās incolārum liberant. 6. Poētae fortūna rēgīnam dēlectat. 7. Spectāmus filiās fēminaē. 8. Filiane Galbae litterās exspectat? 9. Etiam tubae nautārum incolās fugant. 10. Cuius litterās portās?

47. 1. I am calling together the sailors of the queen. 2. The poets' daughters love the land. 3. Whose daughter are you setting free? 4. Do they praise Galba's daughters? 5. We are now waiting for the farmers. 6. Whom does the fortune of the farmers delight?



A STREET IN POMPEII TO-DAY

LESSON V

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION · CAUSAL CLAUSE WITH QUOD

48. The Present Indicative Active of the Second Conjugation.

SINGULAR

1st Pers. mo'neō, *I advise, am advising, do advise*

2^d Pers. mo'nēs, *you advise, are advising, do advise*

3^d Pers. mo'ne t, *he, she, it advises, is advising, does advise*

PLURAL

1st Pers. monē'mus, *we advise, are advising, do advise*

2^d Pers. monē'tis, *you advise, are advising, do advise*

3^d Pers. mo'ne nt, *they advise, are advising, do advise*

a. What verbs belong to the second conjugation (38)?

b. Observe that to the stem **monē-** the same personal endings are added to inflect **moneō** that were added to the stem **amā-** to inflect **amō**. Observe the three forms in which the present tense has the e of the stem not marked long. Compare the forms of the present tense of **amō** (39).

c. To the stems **docē-**, **habē-**, **terrē-**, and **vidē-** add the personal endings and thus inflect their present indicative active.

49.

VOCABULARY

pecū'nia, money (*pecuniary*)

mo'neō, monēre, advise, warn (*admonition*)

pīrā'ta, pirate (*piratical*)

ter'reō, terrēre, scare, frighten (*terror*)

prae'da, booty, plunder (*predatory*)

do'ceō, docēre, teach, show (*docile*)

vi'deō, vidēre, see (*improvident*)

cūr, *adv.*, why?

ha'beō, habēre, have, hold (*habit*)

quod, *conj.*, because

a. The infinitive will hereafter be given with each verb in the vocabulary. Of what help will this be to you (38)?

50. Causal Clause. For the kinds of clauses in a complex sentence see XIX, XX.

Incolās monet quod pīrātae appropinquant, *he warns the inhabitants because the pirates are approaching.*

a. Observe that **quod** introduces a dependent clause, which tells the reason, or cause, of what is stated in the independent part of the sentence. Such a **quod** clause is called a *causal clause*.

51. Rule for a Causal Clause with Quod. *The cause of an action may be expressed by a dependent clause introduced by quod.*

EXERCISES

52. 1. Pecūniam habēs. 2. Iūliam doceō. 3. Incolās saepe monēs. 4. Puellāsne terrent? 5. Quem vident? 6. Monēmus et docēmus. 7. Quid habēmus? 8. Praedam nunc videō. 9. Tubam vidētis. 10. Agricolāsne monētis? 11. Litterās habent. 12. Iūlia filiās poētae docet. 13. Etiam pecūniam agricolārum habent pīrātae. 14. Filiārum fortūna fēminam dēlectat. 15. Cūr Iūliam et Cornēliam monet? 16. Quem docēs et monēs? 17. Fēminae puellās laudant quod labōrant.

53. 1. They are advising. 2. They have. 3. I am warning. 4. You frighten. 5. We see. 6. Does he teach the girls? 7. Do Cornelia and Julia look at the pirate? 8. Why do the pirates frighten the inhabitants? 9. They have the money and the booty. 10. We praise the woman because she teaches the girls. 11. What do you see? What are you looking at?



A ROMAN COIN

LESSON VI

THE DATIVE CASE USED AS THE INDIRECT OBJECT · THE ABLATIVE USED IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES TO SHOW PLACE WHERE

54. **The Dative and Ablative Cases.** Besides the three cases that you have already studied, there are in Latin in common use two other cases, the *dative* and the *ablative*. For the general character of these cases see xxiv, *a*, 4; *b*.

55.

VOCABULARY

do'mina, lady, mistress (of slaves) (dominant)	ha'bitō, habitāre, dwell, live (<i>in-habitant</i>)
fā'bulā, story (<i>fable</i>)	ma'neō, manēre, remain (<i>mansion</i>)
īn'sula, island (<i>peninsula</i>)	nā'rō, nārrāre, tell, relate (<i>narrator</i>)
vi'a, way, road, street (<i>viaduct</i>)	cui, dat. of quis and of quid, to
in, prep. with abl., in, on	whom? for whom? to what?
dēmōn'strō, dēmōnstrāre, point out, show (<i>demonstrate</i>)	for what?

56. The Dative used as Indirect Object.

Cornēliae et puellīs fābulam nārrō, *I am telling a story to Cornelia and the girls, or I am telling Cornelia and the girls a story.*

a. Observe that what is being told is a story, *fābulam*, the direct object; and that the persons to whom the story is told are *Cornelia* and the *girls*. *Cornēliae* and *puellīs*, therefore, are in the dative case, as this is the case which expresses the relation of *to* or *for* (xxiv, *b*). This usage, which is like the English (xxiv, *a*, 4), is called the *Dative of the Indirect Object*.

b. The case endings of the dative are -ae, singular, and -is, plural. Form the dative, singular and plural, of the nouns in sections 26, 34, and 55.

57. Rule for the Dative of the Indirect Object. *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*

58. The Ablative used in Prepositional Phrases to show Place Where.

In *terrā* et in *īnsulīs* *habitant*, *they live on the land and on the islands.*

a. Observe that the phrases (*xvi, a*) *on the land*, *in terrā*, and *on the islands*, *in īnsulīs*, show *place where*. *Terrā* and *īnsulīs* are in the ablative case (*xxiv, b*).

b. The case endings of the ablative are *-ā*, singular, and *-īs*, plural.

c. Form the ablative, singular and plural, of the nouns in sections 26, 34, and 55.

59. Rule for the Ablative of Place Where. *Place where is commonly expressed by a phrase consisting of a preposition, usually *in*, with the ablative case.*

60. Order of Words. The indirect object normally stands before the direct object. An ablative normally stands before the direct object. Variations from this order give emphasis to the word removed from its normal position.

EXERCISES

61. 1. *Agricola dominae viam dēmōnstrat.* 2. *Puellis etiam Cornēlia fābulam nārrat.* 3. *In īnsulā habitāmus.* 4. *Quis poētis insulam dēmōnstrat?* 5. *Cūr pirātae in aquā manent?* 6. *Cui pecūniām dās?* 7. *Nautae agricolis praedam dēmōnstrant.* 8. *Incolae in viīs appropinquant et rēgīnam spectant.* 9. *Dōminām amant quod fābulās nārrat.*

62. 1. To whom are you pointing out the lady? 2. I am pointing out the letter to Julia. 3. They are telling stories to the queen. 4. Galba's daughter gives money to the sailors. 5. Do the pirates live on the island? 6. Whose daughters are approaching in the street?

LESSON VII

THE FIRST DECLENSION · GENDER

63. The First Declension. There are five declensions (xxii) of Latin nouns. Those nouns which end in *-a* in the nominative singular and in *-ae* in the genitive singular are said to belong to the *first declension*. Learn the complete inflection of the noun **agricola**:

SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i> agri'cola	-a
<i>Gen.</i> agri'colae	-ae
<i>Dat.</i> agri'colae	-ae
<i>Acc.</i> agri'colam	-am
<i>Abl.</i> agri'colā	-ā

PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i> agri'colae	-ae
<i>Gen.</i> agricolā'rūm	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i> agri'colis	-is
<i>Acc.</i> agri'colās	-ās
<i>Abl.</i> agri'colis	-is

a. Observe that the inflection of a noun consists merely in adding the case endings to an unchangeable part of the word. This unchangeable part is called the *base*. Decline like **agricola** the nouns in section 55.

64. Gender. Latin nouns are masculine, feminine, or neuter in gender (xxv, *a*, *b*).

a. Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males. **Nauta**, **agricola**, **Galba**, **poēta**, and **pīrāta** are the masculine nouns you have learned. Hereafter the gender of nouns will be shown in the vocabularies by the letters *m.*, *f.*, or *n.*

65.

VOCABULARY

dīligen'tia, -ae, f., diligence (<i>diligent</i>)	por'ta, -ae, f., gate (<i>portal</i>)
fu'ga, -ae, f., flight, rout (<i>refugee</i>)	prōvin'cia, -ae, f., province (<i>provincial</i>)
Germā'nia, -ae, f., Germany (<i>Germanic</i>)	pug'na, -ae, f., fight (<i>pugnacious</i>)
Grae'cia, -ae, f., Greece (<i>Grecian</i>)	sil'vea, -ae, f., woods, forest (<i>silvan</i>)
Ita'lia, -ae, f., Italy (<i>Italian</i>)	victō'ria, -ae, f., victory (<i>victorious</i>)

a. The ending **-ae** of the genitive singular is placed after the nouns in the vocabulary to indicate that these nouns belong to the first declension.

EXERCISES

66. 1. Cūr poētae in silvīs manent? 2. Cui victōriam rēgīnae nārrās? 3. In portā Iūliam et Cornēliam videō. 4. In Germāniā et in Graeciā saepe agricolās convocant. 5. Habitantne in prōvinciā? 6. Victōria nautārum agricolās terret. 7. Diligentia puellārum fēminam dēlectat. 8. In pugnā pīrātās Italiae fugāmus. 9. Galba fugam pīrātārum nārrat.

67. 1. I am living in a province of Greece. 2. The forests of the provinces delight the poets. 3. He gives money to Julia's daughter. 4. To whom do you give water? 5. Whose diligence do you praise? 6. They are waiting in the road and looking at the woods.



A WALL DRAWING. PROBABLY THE WORK OF A ROMAN SCHOOLBOY

FIRST REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS I-VII

68. Give the English meanings of the following words :

agricola	dō	habitō	-ne	quis
ambulō	doceō	in	nunc	quod
amō	domina	incola	pecūnia	rēgīna
appropinquō	et	īnsula	pīrāta	saepe
aqua	etiam	lābōrō	poēta	sed
cantō	exspectō	laudō	porta	silva
convocō	fābula	liberō	portō	spectō
cui	fēmina	littera	praeda	terra
cuius	filia	maneō	prōvincia	terreō
cūr	fortūna	moneō	puella	tuba
dēlectō	fuga	nārrō	pugna	via
dēmōnstrō	fugō	natō	quem	victōria
dīlgentia	habeō	nauta	quid	videō

69. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

often	sing	approach, draw near
to whom? to what?	walk	give
labor, work, suffer	farmer	booty, plunder
whom?	call together	island
wait, wait for, expect	flight, rout	poet
put to flight, rout	land	trumpet
love, like	forest, woods	teach, show
girl	diligence	lady, mistress
gate	delight, please	remain
and	who?	way, road, street
water	but	inhabitant
have, hold	in, on	advise, warn
dwell, live	look at	sailor
story	because	province

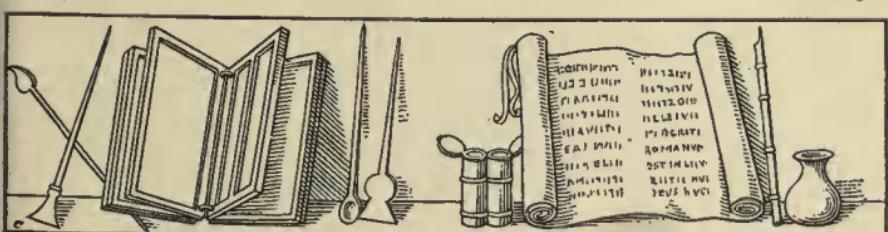
point out, show	fight	tell, relate, narrate
daughter	victory	letter
set free, free, liberate	see	praise
queen	fortune	what?
why?	carry, bring	scare, frighten
money	woman	whose?
even	pirate	swim
now		

70. Decline the nouns and conjugate the verbs in 68. Give the genitive singular of each noun; give the other cases, in the singular and in the plural. Give the third person, singular and plural, of the present indicative of each verb in 68.

71. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 68. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

72. Give the rule, if there is one, for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a brief sentence in Latin:

1. Nominative as the subject
2. Agreement of the verb with its subject
3. Accusative as the object
4. Genitive of possession
5. Causal clause with *quod*
6. Dative of the indirect object
7. Ablative of place where
8. Questions



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

LESSON VIII

THE SECOND DECLENSION

73. The Second Declension. Most nouns of the second declension end in **-us** or **-um**. Those ending in **-us** are generally masculine; those in **-um** are neuter. *Hortus*, *garden*, and *dōnum*, *gift*, are inflected as follows :

SINGULAR			
CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hor'tus</i>	-us	<i>dō'num</i>
<i>'Gen.</i>	<i>hor'tī</i>	-ī	<i>dō'nī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hor'tō</i>	-ō	<i>dō'nō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hor'tum</i>	-um	<i>dō'num</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hor'tō</i>	-ō	<i>dō'nō</i>
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hor'tī</i>	-ī	<i>dō'na</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hortō'rum</i>	-ōrum	<i>dōnō'rūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hor'tīs</i>	-īs	<i>dō'nīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hor'tōs</i>	-ōs	<i>dō'na</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hor'tīs</i>	-īs	<i>dō'nīs</i>

a. Learn the case endings first. Then learn the inflection by adding the case endings to the base of each noun. Then practice the inflection of the nouns in section 74.

b. What do you notice about the dative and the ablative plural of the first and second declensions? What cases are alike in the second declension?

74.

VOCABULARY

<i>amī'cus, -ī, m.</i> , friend (<i>amicable</i>)	<i>hor'tus, -ī, m.</i> , garden (<i>horticulture</i>)
<i>do'minus, -ī, m.</i> , master (of slaves)	
(<i>domineer</i>).	
<i>dō'num, -ī, n.</i> , gift, present (<i>donor</i>)	<i>Mār'cus, -ī, m.</i> , Marcus
<i>e'quus, -ī, m.</i> , horse (<i>equine</i>)	<i>op'pidum, -ī, n.</i> , town
<i>frūmen'tum, -ī, n.</i> , grain	<i>ser'ves, -ī, m.</i> , slave (<i>servile</i>)
	<i>tribū'nus, -ī, m.</i> , tribune (<i>tribunal</i>)

EXÉRCISES

75. 1. Oppidum videō. 2. Oppida vidēmus. 3. Dominusne servum monet? 4. Equum tribūnus spectat. 5. Equī domi-nōrum seryōs dēlectant. 6. Mārcus amicō fābulam nārrat. 7. Domini amicīs praedam dant. 8. In oppidis amicōs saepe convocāmus. 9. Servi appropinquant et frūmentum et aquam portant.

76. 1. Who has the tribune's horse? 2. The servants now have the gifts of the masters. 3. Have you friends in the gar-den? 4. A servant carries the grain of the tribune. 5. Whose gift are they showing to Marcus? 6. We see the town and the gardens of the town.



RUINS OF AN AMPHITHEATER

LESSON IX

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

77. Adjectives in Latin. Latin adjectives, unlike English adjectives, are declined (xxii). There are two declensions of adjectives.

78. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. One class of adjectives has in its masculine and neuter forms the case endings of the second declension, and in its feminine forms the case endings of the first declension : as, **bonus** (masc.), **bona** (fem.), **bonum** (neut.), *good*. Learn the full declension of **bonus** (643).

79. Rule for the Agreement of Adjectives. *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> hortus bonus	puella bona	dōnum bonum
<i>Gen.</i> hortī bonī	puellae bonae	dōnī bonī
<i>Dat.</i> hortō bonō	puellae bonae	dōnō bonō
etc.	etc.	etc.

a. Complete the declension of the expressions given above. Decline together **amicus bonus**, *good friend*; **fābula grāta**, *pleasing story*; **oppidum magnum**, *large town*.

80. The rule given in 79 does not mean that adjectives must have the same case endings as the nouns they modify. An adjective modifying a masculine noun of the first declension will not have the same case endings as the noun. Thus,

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> nauta bonus	nautae boni
<i>Gen.</i> nautae boni	nautārum bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i> nautae bonō	nautis bonis
etc.	etc.

a. Complete the declension of *nauta bonus*. Decline *poēta grātus*, *pleasing poet*.

81. Order of Words. An adjective normally follows the noun which it modifies.

82.

VOCABULARY

car'*r*us, -ī, *m.*, wagon, cart (*car*)
 ci'*b*us, -ī, *m.*, food
 pi'*l*um, -ī, *n.*, javelin
 rē'mus, -ī, *m.*, oar (*trireme*)
 ven'tus, -ī, *m.*, wind (*ventilate*)
 pro'bō, *probāre*, approve, approve
 of (*approbation*)
 bo'nus, bo'na, bo'num, good, kind
 (*bonus*)

grā'tus, grā'ta, grā'tum, pleasing,
 welcome (*gratitude*)
 mag'nus, mag'na, mag'num, great,
 large (*magnitude*)
 va'lidus, va'lida, va'lidum, strong,
 robust (*valid*)
 at'que, *conj.*, and also
 nōn, *adv.*, not (*nonexistent*)
 ubi, *adv.*, where? (*ubiquitous*)

EXERCISES

83. 1. Equōs magnōs spectāmus atque probāmus. 2. Tribū-nus amicō bonō pilum dat. 3. Dōnum grātum nautae Iūliam dēlectat. 4. Nauta validus rēmōs validōs habet. 5. Servōs bonōs videt puella. 6. Nautās venti magnī nōn terrent. 7. Ubi frūmentum agricolārum validōrum vidētis? 8. In carrō magnō frūmentum portant. 9. Pirātae agricolās terrent quod pīla habent.

84. 1. I have a large wagon. 2. The good master has a good slave. 3. And he also gives the good slave a welcome gift. 4. Does the slave approve of the gift? 5. They do not live in a large town of Greece. 6. He is not calling together the good sailors. 7. Where do you see a large forest?



LESSON X

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF SUM · PREDICATE NOUN AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

85. The Present Indicative of *Sum*. The irregular verb *sum*, *I am*, is conjugated in the present indicative as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st Pers.	<i>sum</i> , <i>I am</i>	<i>su'mus</i> , <i>we are</i>
2d Pers.	<i>es</i> , <i>you are</i>	<i>es'tis</i> , <i>you are</i>
3d Pers.	<i>est</i> , <i>he, she, it is</i>	<i>sunt</i> , <i>they are</i>

86. Predicate Noun and Predicate Adjective. For the definition of a predicate noun and of a predicate adjective, see xv.

1. *Mārcus est agricola*, *Marcus is a farmer*.
2. *Nautae sunt amīci*, *the sailors are friends*.
3. *Hortus est magnus*, *the garden is large*.
4. *Puellae sunt grātae*, *the girls are welcome*.

a. Observe the case of *agricola*, *amīci*, *magnus*, and *grātae* (xv, c).

87. *Rule for the Agreement of a Predicate Noun.* A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.

88. *Rule for the Agreement of a Predicate Adjective.* A predicate adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the verb.

89. Order of Words. The verb *sum* generally has no emphasis (unless it begins the sentence), and it is placed in the sentence where it sounds best or where it adds clearness.

In Latin phrases consisting of a monosyllabic preposition, adjective, and noun the order of words is often adjective, preposition, noun: as, *magnō in oppidō*, *in the large town*.

90.

VOCABULARY

bel'lum, -i, n., war (<i>belligerent</i>)	lon'gus, lon'ga, lon'gum, long (<i>longitude</i>)
Britan'nia, -ae, f., Britain (<i>Britanic</i>)	me'us, me'a, me'um, my, mine
de'a, -ae, f., goddess (<i>deity</i>)	no'vus, no'va, no'vum, new (<i>novelty</i>)
de'us, -i, m., god (<i>deify</i>)	par'vus, par'va, par'vum, small, little
Eurō'pa, -ae, f., Europe (<i>European</i>)	tu'us, tu'a, tu'um, your, yours (referring to one owner)
Rō'ma, -ae, f., Rome	e'rat, he, she, it was
Rōmā'nus, -i, m., a Roman (<i>Roman</i>)	e'rānt, they were
Ves'ta, -ae, f., Vesta (<i>vestal</i>)	
lā'tus, lā'ta, lā'tum, wide, broad (<i>latitude</i>)	

EXERCISES

91. 1. Galba agricola est. 2. Galba est validus. 3. Iūlia et Cornēlia sunt filiae meae. 4. Filia mea est parva. 5. Estne oppidum tuum magnum? 6. Britannia est insula Eurōpae. 7. Vesta erat dea Rōmae. 8. Carrī Rōmānōrum bonī et validi erant. 9. Nōn grātum est bellum. 10. Bella nōn grāta sunt. 11. Graecia est terra parva Eurōpae. 12. Sumus amīci tribūnī. 13. Magnō in oppidō viās lātās vidēmus.

92. 1. The streets of the town are long. 2. The streets of Rome were not broad. 3. The roads of Britain are broad and long. 4. Where are you? 5. The new gifts of the tribune are pleasing. 6. We praise the gods because they give gifts. 7. We are Romans, but we are living in Britain.



PUERI PUELLAEQUE

LESSON XI

APPOSITION

93. Apposition.

1. Galba, tribūnus, pīlum habet, *Galba, the tribune, has a javelin.*
2. Mārcum amīcum amō, *I love (my) friend Marcus.*

a. Observe that **tribūnus** denotes the same person as **Galba**, and is joined to **Galba** as a descriptive or explanatory noun; and that **amīcum** is related in the same way to **Mārcum**. Such words are called *appositives*.

94. Rule for Apposition. *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.*

95.

VOCABULARY

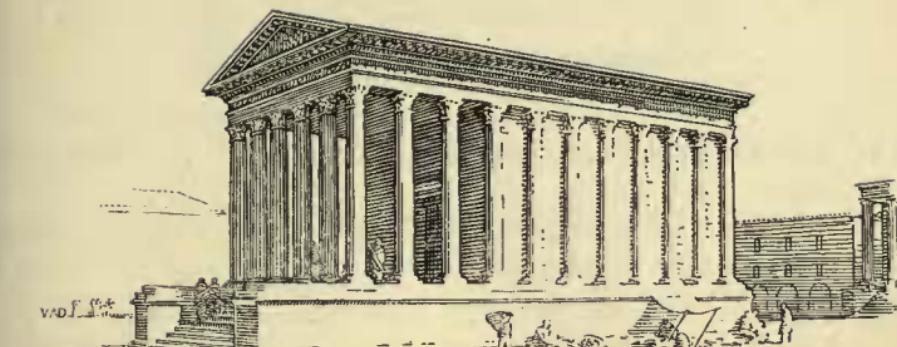
clā'rūs, -a, -um, famous, clear (clarify)	pa'rō, parāre, prepare, get ready (prepare)
dē, prep. with abl., from, concerning (depend)	pa'triā, -ae, f., native land, country (patriotism)
ōce'anus, -ī, m., ocean (oceanic)	tem'plūm, -ī, n., temple

CORNELIA ET IULIA

96. Cornēlia et Iūlia puellae parvae sunt. Ubi habitant? Nōn in Graeciā, sed clārō in oppidō Italiae habitant. Incolae Rōmae sunt. Italia patria Rōmānōrum est. Rōma viās lātās et templā magna habet. Rōmānī bella amant et probant.

Poētae filia est Cornēlia. Poēta lātīs in hortīs saepe ambulat. Atque dē bellō longō et fugā incolārum Germāniae cantat, quod victōriam Rōmānōrum probat.

Iūlia filia agricolae validī est. Agricola equōs et carrōs novōs habet. Cibum et frūmentum equī agricultae portant.



TEMPLUM

Servī agricolae equīs aquam dant. Iūlia equōs amat et servōs laudat. Bonus dominus est agricola.

Mārcus et Galba, tribūnī, amīci puellārum sunt. Mārcus poētae amīcus est et fābulās grātās Cornēliae nārrat. Galba Iūliae silvās et īsulās ōceanī dēmōnstrat.

Fēmina bona puellās docet. Diligentia Cornēliae fēminam dēlectat. In hōrtō poētae puellās convocat et fābulās nārrat. Fābulae dē bellō puellās parvās terrent.

Saepe Vestae dōna parant. Quis est Vesta? Vesta dea Rōmānōrum est et templum habet. Saepe in viis Rōmae puellae ambulant et praedam Germāniae et Britanniae spectant.

LESSON XII

THE SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN *-ER*, *-IR*, *-IUS*, AND *-IUM*

97. Nouns of the Second Declension in *-er* and *-ir*. Some nouns of the second declension end in *-er* and *-ir*. They are slightly different from *hortus* in their inflection:

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pu'er</i>	<i>a'ger</i>	<i>vir</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pu'erī</i>	<i>a'grī</i>	<i>vi'rī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pu'erō</i>	<i>a'grō</i>	<i>vi'rō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pu'erum</i>	<i>a'grum</i>	<i>vi'rum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pu'erō</i>	<i>a'grō</i>	<i>vi'rō</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pu'erī</i>	<i>a'grī</i>	<i>vi'rī</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pu'erō'rum</i>	<i>agrō'rum</i>	<i>virō'rum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pu'erīs</i>	<i>a'grīs</i>	<i>vi'rīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pu'erōs</i>	<i>a'grōs</i>	<i>vi'rōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pu'erīs</i>	<i>a'grīs</i>	<i>vi'rīs</i>

a. Observe that these nouns are declined in the same way as *hortus* except that they lack the ending *-us* in the nominative singular. *Ager* is like *puer* except that *e* before *r* occurs only in the nominative singular.

98. Nouns of the Second Declension in *-ius* and *-ium*. Nouns of the second declension ending in *-ius* and *-ium* contract the genitive ending *-ii* to *-i*. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: *auxi'lium*, gen. *auxi'lī*. Learn the declension of *filius* and *proelium* (637).

99. Gender of Nouns of the Second Declension. Nouns of the second declension ending in *-um* are neuter; most others are masculine.

100.

VOCABULARY

a'ger, agrī, m., field (<i>agriculture</i>) ¹	prae'mium, praemī, n., reward (<i>premium</i>)
auxi'līum, auxi'lī, n., aid, help (<i>auxiliary</i>)	proe'līum, proelī, n., battle
fi'llius, fili, m., son (<i>filial</i>)	pu'er, puerī, m., boy (<i>puerile</i>)
gla'diūs, glādī, m., sword (<i>gladiator</i>)	so'cius, soci, m., comrade, ally (<i>associate</i>)
nūn'tiūs, nūntī, m., messenger (<i>pronunciation</i>)	vir, virī, m., man (<i>virile</i>)

EXERCISES

101. 1. Filiī virōrum in Britanniā sunt. 2. Virī erant sociī. 3. Nūntiūs sociōrum sum. 4. Puerōs parvōs, filiōs tribūnī, exspectāmus. 5. Puerī gladium et pilum Mārcī habent. 6. Quis virō viam dēmōnstrat? 7. Proelium est longum et sociī auxiliū exspectant. 8. In agrō labōrant vir et filiī nūntiī. 9. Cūr virīs praemia nunc datis?

102. 1. The son of the messenger is a small boy. 2. We see your sword, but we have not your javelin. 3. They frighten the little boys and the woman. 4. The men are putting the allies to flight. 5. Where do the messengers live? 6. I have my son's sword. 7. Wars and battles delight the Romans.

¹ The spelling of the English derivatives *agriculture*, *puerile*, and *virile* will help you to recall the spelling of the genitives of *ager*, *puer*, and *vir*.



LESSON XIII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS ENDING IN -ER

103. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions in *-er*.
Some adjectives of the first and second declensions end in *-er* in the nominative singular masculine. Their inflection resembles that of *puer* and of *ager*.

- a. Learn the declension of *liber* and *noster* (643).
- b. Observe that *liber* retains the *e* in all forms, as *puer* does, while *noster*, like *ager*, has no *e* after the nominative.
- c. Decline *miser*, *wretched*, like *liber*. The other adjectives in this book that end in *-er* are declined like *noster*.
- d. Decline together *vir liber*, *free man*; *fēmina misera*, *poor woman*; *bellum miserum*, *wretched war*; *poēta liber*, *free poet*; *amicus noster*, *our friend*.

104.

VOCABULARY

<i>lī'ber, lī'bera, lī'berum</i> , free (<i>liberal</i>)	<i>nos'ter, nos'tra, nos'trum</i> , our (<i>nostrum</i>)
<i>mi'ser, mi'sera, mi'serum</i> , poor, unhappy, wretched (<i>miserable</i>)	<i>su'perō, superāre</i> , surpass, defeat, overcome, conquer (<i>insuperable</i>)
<i>mul'tus, mul'ta, mul'tum</i> , much (<i>multitude</i>)	<i>ves'ter, ves'tra, ves'trum</i> , your (of more than one owner)
<i>mul'tī, mul'tae, mul'ta</i> , many	<i>vo'cō, vocāre</i> , call (<i>vocation</i>)

EXERCISES

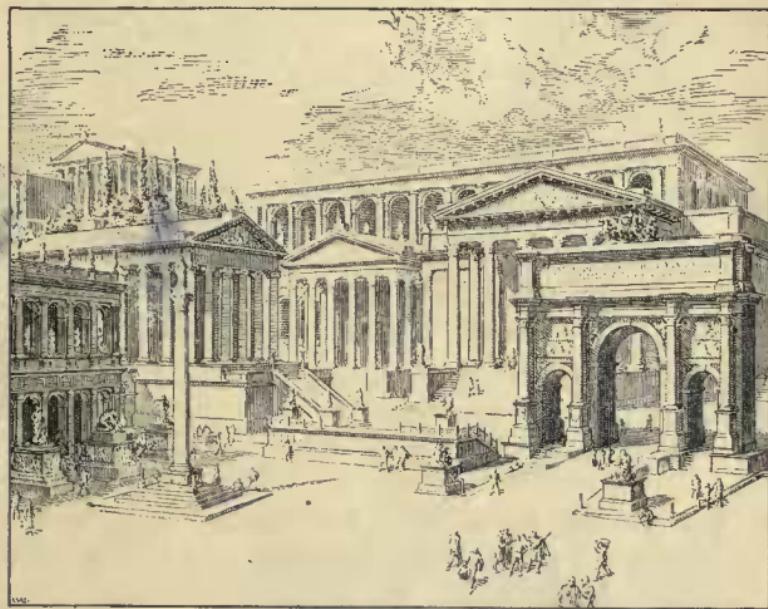
- 105.** 1. Equōs in agrō Mārcī amīcī videō. 2. Nūntius miser fābulam miseram dē fugā sociōrum nārrat. 3. Vestris amīcīs praemia dant. 4. Pecūnia, dōnum Cornēliae, filium nostrum dēlectat. 5. Sumus virī liberī in oppidō liberō. 6. Deae Graeiae multae erant. 7. Socius noster est miser, quod gladium

nōn habet. 8. Rōmānōs in proeliō superant. 9. Vocatne filius tuus? 10. Dominō servus miser cibum parat.

- 106.** 1. Our friends, Mārcus and Galba, are wretched.
 2. There are many carts in the streets of our town. 3. She calls together the unhappy sons of the messengers. 4. Where do you see your horse? 5. The winds do not frighten the sailors. 6. We are sons of free men. 7. I have a javelin, the gift of a friend.

DE GRAECIA

107. Graecia, terra parva, prōvincia Rōmānōrum erat. Athēnae, Sparta, Thēbae, Corinthus clāra oppida Graeciae erant. In oppidis erant templa multa deōrum et deārum. In viis oppidōrum statuae (*statues*) multae virōrum clārōrum erant. Incolae nōn erant miserī. Quis incolās Graeciae nōn laudat?



A RESTORATION OF THE ROMAN FORUM

LESSON XIV

THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF SUM · THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

108. The Imperfect Indicative of *Sum*. The imperfect indicative of *sum* is inflected as follows :

SINGULAR

1. *e'ram*, *I was*
2. *e'rās*, *you were*
3. *e'rat*, *he, she, it was*

PLURAL

- erā'mus*, *we were*
- erā'tis*, *you were*
- e'rānt*, *they were*

109. The Future Indicative of *Sum*. The future indicative of *sum* is inflected as follows :

SINGULAR

1. *e'rō*, *I shall be*
2. *e'ris*, *you will be*
3. *e'rit*, *he, she, it will be*

PLURAL

- e'rimus*, *we shall be*
- e'ritis*, *you will be*
- e'runt*, *they will be*

110. The Dative with Adjectives.

Dōnum puerō erit grātum, *the gift will be pleasing to the boy*.

a. Observe that *puerō* is translated with the adjective *grātum*, *pleasing to the boy*. Certain Latin adjectives, particularly those meaning *near*, *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites, are thus followed by the case expressing *to* or *for*, exactly as they are followed in English by a phrase beginning with *to* or *for*: as, *fit for war*, *unfriendly to us*. This usage is known as the *Dative with Adjectives*.

111. Rule for the Dative with Adjectives. Certain adjectives meaning *near*, *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites, may be accompanied by a dative to show the person or the thing toward which the quality of the adjective is directed.

112.

VOCABULARY

<i>amī'cus, -a, -um</i> , friendly	<i>in'terim</i> , <i>adv.</i> , meanwhile (<i>in-terim</i>)
<i>cer'tē</i> , <i>adv.</i> , certainly	
<i>fini'timus, -a, -um</i> , neighboring, near (<i>affinity</i>)	<i>li'ber, librī</i> , <i>m.</i> , book (<i>library</i>)
<i>idō'neus, -a, -um</i> , fit, suitable	<i>propin'quus, -a, -um</i> , near (<i>pro-pinquity</i>)
<i>inimī'cus, -a, -um</i> , unfriendly, hostile (<i>inimical</i>)	<i>pro'ximus, -a, -um</i> , nearest, next, very near (<i>proximity</i>)
<i>iniū'ria, -ae, f.</i> , injustice, wrong (<i>injury</i>)	

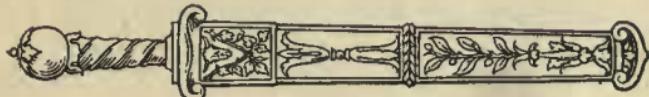
EXERCISES

113. 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Sunt, erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Sum, eram, erō. 5. Es, erās, eris. 6. Estis, erātis, eritis. 7. Certē erāmuş inimīci Mārcō, vestrō filiō. 8. Proximī oppidō erant multī agrī. 9. Iniūriae sociōrum multae erunt. 10. Īnsulam terrae propinquam videō. 11. Venti nautis nōn erunt grāti. 12. Agricolae bellō longō idōnei nōn erant. 13. Interim vestrīs filiis erimus amīci. 14. Gladii atque pila proeliō idōnea¹ sunt.

114. 1. I am, we are. 2. Where were we? I was in the town. 3. I shall be, we shall be. 4. Is he a tribune? They are allies. 5. Meanwhile you will be a free man. 6. Our towns are near Greece. 7. In our towns the men are unfriendly to Rome. 8. There will be² a great battle in Britain. 9. The books will certainly be welcome to my friend Marcus.

¹ The predicate adjective *idōnea* is neuter because the two subjects are things without life.

² Express *there will be* by *erit*, and place *erit* at the beginning of the sentence. How do you say *there are?* *there is?* *there were?*



GLADIUS

SECOND REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS VIII-XIV

115. Give the English meanings of the following words :

ager	deus	interim	nūntius	rēmūs
amicus, <i>noun</i>	dominus	lātus	ōceanus	servus
amicus, <i>adj.</i>	dōnum	liber	oppidum	socius
atque	equus	liber	parō	superō
auxilium	filius	longus	parvus	templum
bellum	finitimus	magnus	patria	tribūnus
bonus	frūmentum	meus	pīlum	tuus
carrus	gladius	miser	praemium	ubi
certē	grātus	multus	probō	validus
cibus	hortus	multī	proelium	ventus
clārus	idōneus	nōn	propinquus	vester
dē	inimicus	noster	proximus	vir
dea	iniūria	novus	puer	vocō

116. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

garden	from, concerning	strong, robust
many	where?	native land, country
oar	son	great, large
man	war	your (<i>sing.</i>)
call	comrade, ally	slave
god	meanwhile	aid, help
long	horse	near
sword	wind	nearest, next
goddess	boy	javelin
food	good, kind	unfriendly
much	not	new
grain	messenger	battle
approve, approve of	famous	get ready
injustice, wrong	friendly	certainly

friend	field	book
tribune	small, little	fit, suitable
your (<i>plur.</i>)	gift	free
temple	pleasing, welcome	our
my, mine	surpass, defeat, overcome, conquer	town
master	wide, broad	reward
cart	neighboring, near	ocean
and also	poor, unhappy, wretched	

117. Decline each noun and adjective in 115. Conjugate each verb in the present indicative active. Give the genitive singular of each noun; give the other cases, in the singular and the plural. Conjugate **sum** in the imperfect and future indicative.

118. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 115. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

119. Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Agreement of adjectives | 4. Apposition |
| 2. Predicate noun | 5. Dative with adjectives |
| 3. Predicate adjective | |



A ROMAN BOY

A ROMAN GIRL

LESSON XV

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS · THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

120. The Imperfect Indicative Active, First and Second Conjugations. The imperfect indicative active of the first and second conjugations is inflected as follows :

SINGULAR

1. amā'bam, *I was loving*
2. amā'bās, *you were loving*
3. amā'bat, *he was loving*

PLURAL

- amābā'mus, *we were loving*
- amābā'tis, *you were loving*
- amā'ba nt, *they were loving*

SINGULAR

1. monē'bam, *I was advising*
2. monē'bās, *you were advising*
3. monē'bat, *he was advising*

PLURAL

- monēbā'mus, *we were advising*
- monēbā'tis, *you were advising*
- monē'ba nt, *they were advising*

a. Observe that in this tense the personal ending of the first person singular is **-m**, not **-ō**.

b. Observe that **amābam** is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the tense sign **-bā-**, and to that tense sign the personal endings : **amā-ba-m** etc. Divide **monēbam** into three parts in the same way.

c. Inflect the imperfect of the verbs in 68 and 115.

d. The imperfect tense expresses action going on in past time.

121. The Ablative of Means.

Rōmānī gladiīs et pīlīs pugnābant, *the Romans were fighting with swords and javelins.*

a. Observe that **gladiīs** and **pīlīs** are in the ablative, since they express the relations of *with* and *by*. They answer the questions *with what?* *by means of what?* The ablative so used is called the *Ablative of Means*. It is limited to nouns that denote things, and is translated by a phrase beginning with *by*, *with*, or *by means of*.

122. Rule for the Ablative of Means. *The means by which an action is accomplished is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (xxiv, b).*

123.**VOCABULARY**

ar'mō, armāre, arm, equip (*armor*)
 com'pleō, complēre, fill (*complēte*)
 dēfes'sus, -a, -um, tired out, weary
 Helvē'tiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Helvetians

lēgā'tus, -ī, *m.*, lieutenant, ambassador (*legation*)
 pug'nō, pugnāre, fight (*pugilist*)
 scū'tum, -ī, *n.*, shield (*escutcheon*)
 vī'cus, -ī, *m.*, village (*vicinity*)

EXERCISES

124. 1. Dēmōnstrābant, parābat, complēbātis. 2. Nārrābam, vidēbās, habitābāmus. 3. Superābās, habēbātis, probābat. 4. Cantābās, liberābam, manēbātis. 5. Terrēbam, vocābat, dēlectabātis. 6. Lēgātōs convocābam. 7. Agricolae frūmentum et cibum carris parvīs portābant. 8. Interim gladiīs in silvīs pugnābant. 9. Scūtis amīcōs nostrōs armābāmus. 10. Lēgātūm, amīcum meum, vocābam. 11. Pilīs tribūnum et lēgātūm in pugnā superābant. 12. Deīs dōna vestra erunt grāta. 13. Vīcus proximus oceānō erat.

125. 1. I was walking, but you (*sing.*) were waiting in the field. 2. We were arming, they were remaining. 3. You (*plur.*) were approaching, and they were fighting. 4. He was working in the village. 5. We were teaching by means of stories and books. 6. With your swords you were liberating your friends. 7. Food was welcome to the tired Helvetians. 8. The men were fighting with long javelins. 9. The lieutenant was filling the village with food and grain.

LESSON XVI

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS · THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

126. The Future Indicative Active, First and Second Conjugations. The future indicative active of the first and second conjugations is inflected as follows :

SINGULAR

1. *amā'bō, I shall love*
2. *amā'bis, you will love*
3. *amā'bit, he will love*

PLURAL

- amā'bimus, we shall love*
amā'bitis, you will love
amā'bunt, they will love

SINGULAR

1. *monē'bō, I shall advise*
2. *monē'bis, you will advise*
3. *monē'bit, he will advise*

PLURAL

- monē'bimus, we shall advise*
monē'bitis, you will advise
monē'bunt, they will advise

a. Observe that the future of **amō** is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the tense sign **-bi-**, and to the tense sign the personal endings ; but the **i** is dropped in the first person, and in the third person plural is changed to **u**.

i. How is the future of **moneō** formed ?

b. Inflect the future of the verbs in 68 and 115.

127.

VOCABULARY

- aedi'ficō, aedificāre,** build (*edifice*)
ae'ger, ae'gra, ae'grum, sick
cum, prep. with abl., with
cū'ra, -ae, f., care, anxiety (*curator*)
in, prep. with acc., into, to

- nāvi'gium, nāvi'gī, n.,** boat
pro'perō, properāre, hasten
quō, adv., whither ?
stu'dium, studī, n., zeal, eagerness (*study*)
te'neō, tenēre, hold, keep (*tenant*)

128. The Ablative of Manner.

1. Mārcus cum studiō labōrat, *Marcus works with zeal (zealously).*
2. Mārcus magnō cum studiō labōrat, *Marcus works with great zeal.*
3. Mārcus magnō studiō labōrat, *Marcus works with great zeal.*

a. Observe that *manner* is expressed in these sentences by the use of the ablative case. Observe that 2 and 3 are translated in the same way, and that **cum** may be omitted when there is an adjective in the phrase. The ablative thus used answers the questions *how?* *in what way?* *in what manner?* and is called the *Ablative of Manner*. The ablative of manner may often be translated by an adverb: *cum studiō, zealously.*

129. Rule for the Ablative of Manner. *The ablative with cum is used with abstract nouns (1, f) to denote the manner of an action; but cum may be omitted if an adjective modifies the noun of the phrase.*

EXERCISES

130. 1. Vocābunt, complēbunt, properābunt. 2. Armābitne? superābit, tenēbimus. 3. Manēbuntne? dēmōnstrābimus, terrēbō. 4. Labōrābis, docēbitis, habēbō. 5. Quō properābit agricola validus? 6. In agrōs properābunt agricola et puerī. 7. In agrīs labōrābunt magnō cum studiō. 8. Cum cūrā frūmentum in vicum portābunt. 9. Magnā diligentiā nāvigium aedificābitis. 10. Servī aegrī parvō studiō labōrant.

131. 1. You (*sing.*) will build. 2. He will hasten. 3. Who will not remain? 4. You (*plur.*) will hold. 5. We shall carry the sick men with great care. 6. Whither will the lieutenant hasten? 7. He will hasten into Greece and also will arm the inhabitants. 8. Where will our friends fight zealously? 9. The men were diligently filling the boats.

LESSON XVII

PRINCIPAL PARTS · THE PERFECT STEM · THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION

132. Principal Parts. The principal parts of the verb *amō* are as follows:

PRES. IND. ACT.	PRES. INF. ACT.	PERF. IND. ACT.	PERF. PASS. PART.
<i>amō</i>	<i>amāre</i>	<i>amāvī</i>	<i>amātus</i>

a. The principal parts of the verb are so called because all forms of the verb can be made from them, or from the three stems shown in the principal parts. These three stems are as follows:

1. Present stem: *amā-*, found by dropping the *-re* of the present infinitive active.
2. Perfect stem: *amāv-*, found by dropping the personal ending *-i* of the first person singular of the perfect indicative active.
3. Participial stem: *amāt-*, found by dropping the nominative ending *-us* of the perfect passive participle.

133. The Perfect Stem. By the use of the present stem you have conjugated the present, imperfect, and future tenses. By the use of the perfect stem *amāv-* the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses are conjugated.

134. The Perfect Indicative Active of the First Conjugation. The perfect indicative active of *amō* is inflected as follows:

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS OF PERFECT TENSE
1. <i>amā'vī</i> , <i>I have loved, I loved</i>	<i>-i</i>
2. <i>amāvis'ti</i> , <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	<i>-istī</i>
3. <i>amā'vit</i> , <i>he has loved, etc.</i>	<i>-it</i>
PLURAL	
1. <i>amā'vimus</i> , <i>we have loved, etc.</i>	<i>-imus</i>
2. <i>amāvis'tis</i> , <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	<i>-istis</i>
3. <i>amāvē'runt</i> , <i>they have loved, etc.</i>	<i>-ērunt</i>

a. Observe that the perfect tense has two meanings : *I have loved* and *I loved*. Both express completed action. *I have loved* indicates that the action is completed at the present time ; and the perfect tense so used is known as the *perfect definite*. *I loved* indicates merely that the action was completed at some indefinite time in the past ; and the perfect tense so used is known as the *perfect indefinite*. The imperfect tense, in contrast with the perfect, expresses an action going on in the past (120, d).

b. Give the principal parts of each verb of the first conjugation in 68 and 115 ; they are formed in the same way as those of *amō* (except *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*). Inflect the perfect tense of each.

EXERCISES

135. 1. *Vocāvitne?* *convocāvit*, *superāvit*. 2. *Pugnāvērunt*, *exspectāvērunt*, *labōrāvērunt*. 3. *Properāvimus*, *aedificāvimus*, *armāvimus*. 4. *Laudāvīne?* *vocāvistī*, *properāvistis*. 5. *Portāvit*, *dēlectāvit*, *dedit*.

136. 1. You have praised, you showed, you related. 2. I have given, I brought, I set free. 3. They approved, they have sung, they swam. 4. We gave, we dwelt, we showed.

137.

VOCABULARY

ar'ma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, arms

Rō'mulus, -ī, *m.*, Romulus

di'ū, *adv.*, for a long time, long

Sabī'nī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Sabines

prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, for;
in defense of (*proceed*)

vul'nerō, *vulnerārē*, *vulnerāvī*, *vul-*
nerātus, wound (*vulnerable*)

DE SABINIS

138. *Rōmulus Rōmam, clārum oppidum Italiae, aedificāvit*. Validī virī erant Rōmānī et patriam amābant. Saepe prō patriā pugnābant et saepe Sabinōs armis in bellō superābant. Sabinī bona arma habēbant et magnō cum studiō pilis longīs diū pugnāvērunt. Sed Rōmānī Sabinōs fugāvērunt et multōs virōs gladiīs vulnerāvērunt.

LESSON XVIII

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, SECOND CONJUGATION THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

139. Principal Parts of Verbs of the Second Conjugation.
The principal parts of verbs of the second conjugation are not so regular as those of the first conjugation. You have already had some verbs of the second conjugation. Their principal parts are as follows :

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
compleō	complēre	complēvī	complētus
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctus
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitū
maneō	manēre	mānsi	mānsūrus
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	—
terrēō	terrēre	terrui	territus
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus

- a. Learn the principal parts of these verbs. What is the perfect stem of each?
- b. Learn the inflection of the perfect tense of **moneō** (659), and practice the inflection of the perfect tense of the other verbs.

EXERCISES

140. 1. Monuit, monuērunt, docuit. 2. Docuērunt, habuit, habuērunt. 3. Terruistī, terruistis, tenuistīne? 4. Vīdī? vīdēruntne? mānsimus. 5. Tenuit, tenuērunt, terruērunt.

141. 1. I have filled, you have seen, we have held. 2. He frightened, it had, they have filled. 3. She has remained, I have taught, you (*plur.*) have warned.

142. The Ablative of Accompaniment.

Cum filiō meō ambulābat, *he was walking with my son.*

a. Observe that the phrase *cum filiō* answers the questions *with whom?* *in whose company?* This use of the ablative with the preposition **cum** is called the *Ablative of Accompaniment*.

143. Rule for the Ablative of Accompaniment. *The ablative with cum is used to show accompaniment.*

144.

VOCABULARY

captī'vus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , captive (<i>captivate</i>)	lo'cus, -ī, <i>m.</i> (<i>plur. loca, n.</i>), place (<i>location</i>)
cau'sa, -ae, <i>f.</i> , cause, reason	
hi'emō, hiemāre; hiemāvī, hiemā-	peri'culum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , peril, danger
tūrus, ¹ spend the winter	(<i>peril</i>)

EXERCISES

145. 1. Puerī carrum nostrum frūmentō complēvērunt.
 2. Cum cūrā puellam aegram certē portāvērunt. 3. Scūta et gladiōs captivōrum prō portis vīdī. 4. Locus proeliō idōneus nōn erat. 5. Lēgātus cum multīs virīs in Germāniā prope-rāvit. 6. Causam bellī dēmōnstrābit. 7. In Graeciā cum amicīs vestrīs hiemāvī. 8. Magnō cum periculō mānsērunt.

146. 1. The swords and the javelins frightened the captives. 2. They fought with the tribune in the long war. 3. The women were spending the winter in Italy. 4. Who will tell the lieutenant the cause of the war? 5. They have filled the place with arms. 6. The Romans have fought with the allies in defense of Rome.

¹ Future active participle (441, a). This form, if it occurs, is given in the principal parts where the perfect passive participle is not in use.

LESSON XIX

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS* · THE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

147. The Demonstrative *Is*. The demonstrative *is*, *this*, *that*, plur. *these*, *those*, is declined as follows :

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> is	e'a	id	iī (e'i)	e'ae	e'a
<i>Gen.</i> e'ius	e'ius	e'ius	eō'rum	eā'rum	eō'rum
<i>Dat.</i> e'i	e'i	e'i	iīs (e'is)	iīs (e'is)	iīs (e'is)
<i>Acc.</i> e'um	e'am	id	e'os	e'as	e'a
<i>Abl.</i> e'ō	e'ā	e'ō	iīs (e'is)	iīs (e'is)	iīs (e'is)

a. *Ii* and *iīs* are pronounced as monosyllables, *i* and *īs*.

148. The Uses of *Is*. There is no word in English like *is*. Although it is a demonstrative pronoun (*ii, f*) and means *this* and *that*, it does not point emphatically to what is near, as does *hic*, or to what is remote, as does *ille* (228). Generally it refers to somebody or to something that has just been mentioned. Sometimes it approaches in meaning the English definite article *the*. It is translated by *this* or *that* as the meaning of the sentence may require.

1. *Is agricolās convocāvit, this (or that) man called the farmers together.*

2. *Is servus cum diligentiā labōrat, this (or that) slave works diligently.*

a. Observe that *is* is used in the first sentence as a pronoun, and in the second sentence as an adjective (III, *e*). **Is**, when an adjective, usually precedes its noun.

b. Decline together *id dōnum*; *is nūntius*; *ea patria*.

149. The Perfect Indicative of *Sum*. The perfect indicative of *sum* is conjugated as follows:

SINGULAR

1. *fu'ī*, *I have been, was*
2. *fu is'tī*, *you have been, were*
3. *fu'it*, *he has been, was*

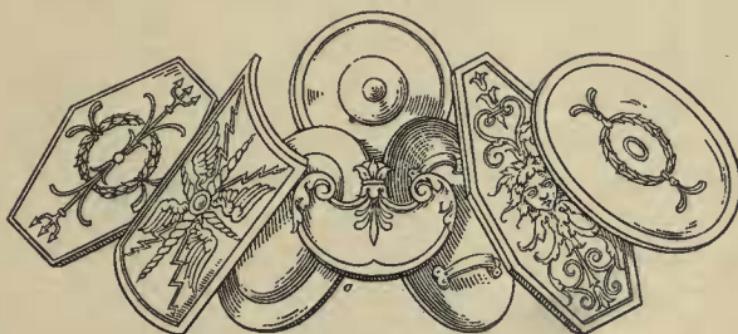
PLURAL

- fu'imus*, *we have been, were*
- fui'stis*, *you have been, were*
- fuē'runt*, *they have been, were*

EXERCISES

150. 1. Id scūtum vidi. 2. Is gladius est meus. 3. Ea pugna erit longa. 4. Eō gladiō pugnābō. 5. Ei captivō cibum dedit. 6. Id erat tuum. 7. Periculum eōrum lēgātōrum dēmōnstrābat. 8. In Germāniā et in terrā Helvētiōrum fuimus. 9. Fuitne tua filia aegra? 10. Dominus eius servī fuit dēfessus. 11. Ea victōria Rōmānōs dēlectāvit. 12. Cum eō amīcō in Britanniam properābam. 13. Ubi fuistis?

151. 1. By means of these arms we shall overcome the pirates on the ocean. 2. That help is pleasing to the Romans. 3. I have often been in those woods. 4. I have taught the sons of these farmers. 5. You have seen and praised these allies because they fought with zeal. 6. Whither were you hastening with this boy? 7. The causes of this war have been many.



SCUTA

LESSON XX

THE INTERROGATIVE *QUIS*

152. The Uses of the Interrogative *Quis*. The interrogative *quis* (*qui*), *who?* *which?* *what?* may be used as a pronoun or as an adjective (II, *e*; III, *e*): *quis vocat?* *who calls?* *quod dōnum habēs?* *what gift have you?*

153. The Declension of the Interrogative Pronoun. The interrogative pronoun *quis* is declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cu'ius</i>	<i>cu'ius</i>	<i>quō'rūm</i>	<i>quā'rūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>qui'būs</i>	<i>qui'būs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>qui'būs</i>	<i>qui'būs</i>

a. Which forms have you already learned?

154. The Declension of the Interrogative Adjective. The interrogative adjective *qui* is declined as follows in the singular (the plural is the same as that of *quis*):

SINGULAR		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>cu'ius</i>	<i>cu'ius</i>	<i>cu'ius</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>

a. Decline together *qui captīvus*; *quae causa*; *quod perīculum*.

EXERCISES

155. 1. Quī id templum aedificāvērunt? 2. Qui lēgātī eōs virōs armāvērunt? 3. Quid in eō agrō est? 4. Cui dat Mārcus id praemium? 5. Quibus terris est Britannia proxima? 6. Quem laudātis? 7. Quem librum laudāvit Cornēlia? 8. Quō gladiō captīvum vulnerāvērunt? 9. Quod periculum nārrās?

156. 1. Who was the messenger of the gods? 2. What gift did he give to this boy? 3. Whose shield did that slave have? 4. To whom have they shown the causes of this war? 5. Whom have you overcome? 6. With what arms have they overcome the Helvetians? 7. In which village did they live?

157.

VOCABULARY

adōrō, adōrāre, adōrāvī, adōrātus,	imperium, impe'ri, <i>n.</i> , command, pray to, worship (<i>adoration</i>)
animus; -ī, <i>m.</i> , feeling, mind (<i>ani-</i> <i>mus</i>)	power (<i>imperial</i>) i'taque, <i>conj.</i> , and so, therefore

DE DEIS RÖMANORUM

158. Mars, prōavus (*the ancestor*) Rōmānōrum, arma et proelia et bella amābat. Rōmulus et Remus, filii deī armōrum, Rōmam aedificāvērunt. Itaque proelia et bella animōs Rōmānōrum dēlectāvērunt. Mercurium et Neptūnum et Vestam Rōmānī adōrābant. Mercurius, nūntius deōrum, imperia deōrum incolis terrārum (*the earth*) nārrābat. Neptūnum, deum aquārum et ūceanī, nautae adōrābant. Fēminaē Vestam, deam focī (*hearth*), adōrābant et ei deae multa dōna parābant.



MARS

LESSON XXI

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, FUTURE, AND PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

159. The Present, Imperfect, Future, and Perfect Indicative Active of the Third Conjugation. Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active of the verb *regō* (660). What are the present and perfect stems?

a. Observe that the personal endings, except in the first person singular of the future, are the same as in the first and second conjugations.

b. Observe that the differences between this conjugation and the first and second conjugations are in the present and future tenses.

c. Observe that in the present tense the *e* of the present stem *rege-* disappears before *ō* in the first person, just as happened in *ama-ō*; and that it becomes *u* in the third person plural, while in the other persons it is *i*. The inflection is like that of *erō*, future of *sum*.

d. Observe that the future does not use *-bi-* as a tense sign, but has *-a-* in the first person singular, and *-e-* in the other persons.

e. Give heed to the quantities and the accents. Inflect like *regō* the verbs in the following vocabulary.

160.

VOCABULARY

bene, *adv.*, well (*benevolent*)

emō, *emere*, *ēmī*, *ēmptus*, buy
(*preēmption*)

hodiē, *adv.*, to-day

mittō, *mittere*, *mīsī*, *missus*, send
(*remit*)

ōlim, *adv.*, once, formerly

dūcō, *dūcere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*, lead
(*conduct*) *regō*, *regere*, *rēxī*, *rēctus*, rule,
 manage (*regent*)

tum, *adv.*, then

dūcēbat, *dūcēre*, *dūcēbat*, lead

EXERCISES

161. 1. *Regit*, *regēbat*, *reget*. 2. *Emō*, *emēbam*, *emam*.
3. *Dūcunt*, *dūcent*, *dūcēbat*. 4. *Rēxit*, *rēxērunt*, *dūxit*. 5. *Dūxērunt*, *ēmīstī*, *ēmīstīs*. 6. *Mīsī*, *mīsimus*, *mīsit*. 7. *Mittimus*,

mittunt, mittent. 8. Is agricola multōs agrōs habet. 9. Frūmentum in oppidum magnum nāvigiīs mittet. 10. Frūmentum in vīcum equīs validīs mittet. 11. Quis eōs equōs in viā dūcet? 12. Filiī agricolae, Mārcus et Galba, equōs dūxērunt et hodiē dūcent. 13. Tum arma nova ement. 14. Ōlim Rōmānī Italiam bene rēxērunt.

162. 1. They rule, they were ruling, they will rule. 2. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 3. I have bought, we bought, they bought. 4. I am sending, I shall send, I have sent. 5. You send, you will send, you have sent. 6. The Romans once had many lands. 7. Often they did not rule these lands well. 8. Then the allies sent assistance. 9. What girls spent the winter in Italy? 10. I shall send a lieutenant with these captives into Italy.



GLADIATORS ENTERING THE ARENA

THIRD REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS XV-XXI

163. Give the English meanings of the following words :

adōrō	causa	hiemō	mittō	regō
aedificō	compleō	hodiē	nāvigium	scūtum
aeger	cum	imperium	ōlim	studium
animus	cūra	in	periculum	teneō
arma	dēfessus	is	prō	tum
armō	diū	itaque	properō	vīcus
bene	dūcō	lēgātus	pugnō	vulnerō
captivus	emō	locus	quō	

164. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

lead	rule	zeal, eagerness
once, formerly	place	care, anxiety
peril	equip, arm	arms
with	sick	pray to, worship
before, for, in defense of	shield	hold, keep
then	spend the winter	hasten
whither?	this, that	captive
village	into, to	to-day
tired out, weary	send	cause, reason
feeling, mind	well	buy
fight	lieutenant, envoy	command, power
wound	fill	and so, therefore
for a long time, long	build	boat

165. Decline each noun and each adjective in 163. Conjugate each verb in the present, imperfect, and future indicative active. Give the principal parts of each verb in 68, 115, and 163. Conjugate each verb in 163 in the perfect indicative active. Decline *is* and *quis*.

166. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 163. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

167. Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

1. Ablative of means 3. Ablative of accompaniment
2. Ablative of manner



A RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

LESSON XXII

READING LESSON

168.

VOCABULARY

- āla, -ae, *f.*, wing
- cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax
- Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete
- Daedalus, -ī, *m.*, Dædalus, father
of Icarus
- iam, *adv.*, now, already
- īcarus, -ī, *m.*, Icarus
- que, *conj.*, enclitic (22), and
- quoque, *adv.*, also, too
- aptō, aptāre, aptāvī, aptātus, fit,
fit to, adjust (*adapt*)
- cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfirmāvī,

- cōfirmātus, strengthen, en-
courage (*confirmation*)
- dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidī, —, fall
off, fall down (*deciduous*)
- fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus, fash-
ion, devise (*fiction*)
- postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, pos-
tulātus, demand (*postulate*)
- solvō, solvere, solvī, salūtus, loose
(*solve*)
- volō, volāre, volāvī, volātūrus, fly
(*volatile*)

169.

DE ICARO

MĀRCUS. Fābulam bonam amīcus meus hodiē nārrāvit.

IŪLIA. Dē quō nārrāvit amīcus tuus?

MĀRCUS. Dē īcarō, Daedalī filiō, puerō miserō.

IŪLIA. Ubi habitābat īcarus? In Britanniā?

MĀRCUS. Nōn in Britanniā habitābat, sed in Crētā, īnsulā
magnā et clārā. Daedalus filiō ālās fīnxit et parāvit. Eās
ālās īcarō magnā cum cūrā cērā aptāvit. Ālāe īcarō grātiae
erant. Tum Daedalus puerum volāre (*to fly*) docuit, sed altius,
(*too high*) volāvit īcarus. Itaque sōl (*the sun*) cēram solvit,
et ālāe dēcidērunt.

IŪLIA. Sed quid dē īcarō?

MĀRCUS. īcarus quoque dēcidit in oēceanum.

IŪLIA. Ēheu (*alas*), miserum īcarum!

ROMANI PRO SOCIIS PUGNANT

170. Quod iniūriae multae fuērunt, sociī nostrī auxilium postulant. Itaque Rōmānī lēgātum cum virīs in terram Helvētiōrum mittent. Is lēgātus iam virōs convocāvit in oppidum. Cibum et carrōs ēmit et virōs gladiis scūtisque armāvit. Sociī interim frūmentum parāvērunt. Hodiē lēgātus animōs virōrum cōfirmābit. Tum in agrōs finitimōs virōs dūcet et proelium exspectābit. Locus eius proeli propinquus Helvētiis est. Nostrī virī magnō cum studiō prō sociis pugnābunt et Helvētiōs superābunt. Multōs captivōs in oppidum dūcent. Ei captivī in vīcis nostrīs hiemābunt.



ICARUS IN OCEANUM DECIDIT

LESSON XXIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION

171. The Third Declension. Nouns of the third declension end variously in the nominative singular. They are of masculine, feminine, or neuter gender. Their inflection is illustrated by the following words:

rēx, m.	miles, m.	virtūs, f.	caput, n.	CASE ENDINGS
king	soldier	valor	head	M. AND F. N.
SINGULAR				
Nom. rēx	mī'les	vir'tūs	ca'put	-s or — —
Gen. rē'gis	mī'lītis	virtū'tis	ca'pit is	-is -is
Dat. rē'gī	mī'lītī	virtū'tī	ca'pitī	-ī -ī
Acc. rē'gem	mī'lītem	virtū'tem	ca'put	-em —
Abl. rē'ge	mī'līte	virtū'te	ca'pite	-e -e
PLURAL				
Nom. rē'gēs	mī'lītēs	virtū'tēs	ca'pita	-ēs -a
Gen. rē'gum	mī'lītum	virtū'tum	ca'pitum	-um -um
Dat. rē'gibus	mī'lītibus	virtū'tibus	capi'tibus	-ibus -ibus
Acc. rē'gēs	mī'lītēs	virtū'tēs	ca'pita	-ēs -a
Abl. rē'gibus	mī'lītibus	virtū'tibus	capi'tibus	-ibus -ibus

a. To decline a noun of the third declension it is necessary to know the gender, and the spelling of the nominative and the genitive singular. These things, therefore, must be learned about every noun of this declension. Often an English derivative will suggest the spelling of the genitive singular: as, *capital*, *capitis*; *military*, *militis*.

b. No adequate rule for the gender of nouns of the third declension can be given. But

Nouns ending in -tor are masculine.

Nouns ending in -tās, -tūs, or -tūdō, and most nouns ending in -i- are feminine.

Nouns ending in -e, -al, or -ar are neuter.

c. Learn the case endings. Then practice the declension of the nouns above and of those in the vocabulary. Observe that masculines and feminines are declined alike.

d. Decline together *miles bonus*, *good soldier*; *virtūs nostra*, *our valor*; and *caput parvum*, *small head*.

172.

VOCABULARY

caput, capitīs, n., head (*capital*)
dux, ducīs, m., leader, general
 (*conductor*)
eques, equitīs, m., horseman (*eques-
 trian*)
et . . . et, conj., both . . . and
fortiter, adv., bravely

lapis, lapidīs, m., stone (*dilapidate*)
miles, militīs, m., soldier (*military*)
pedes, peditīs, m., foot soldier
 (*pedestrian*)
rēx, rēgis, m., king (*regal*)
virtūs, virtūtīs, f., valor, courage
 (*virtue*)

EXERCISES

173. 1. Rēgem et ducem hodiē vīdī. 2. Capita multōrum peditum vīdimus. 3. Et rēgēs et ducēs militēs nostrōs dūxērunt. 4. Etiam equitēs prō rēge et duce fortiter pugnābant. 5. Virtūte et studiō¹ sociōs superāvērunt. 6. Lapidibus et pilis multōs agricolās vulnerāvērunt. 7. Virtūs equitum atque studium peditum lēgātum certē dēlectābit.² 8. Quiṣ iīs equitibus scūta emet? 9. Nostrōs militēs in silvās quoque mīsimus.

174. 1. The commands of the king have been many. 2. We shall approve of the commands of the kings. 3. By the valor of these soldiers we shall overcome the Helvetians. 4. I shall spend the winter with the general. 5. In a town I saw a king. 6. This king was a good general and ruled well. 7. He bought food for the wretched foot soldiers. 8. He sent both arms and grain into that town.

¹ Observe that the ablative of an abstract noun may express means.

² Observe that a singular verb may be used with two subjects, if the subjects are abstract nouns and considered as a single whole.

LESSON XXIV

THE THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN *-IO* · THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH · THE ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

175. The Third Conjugation: Verbs in *-io*. Certain verbs of the third conjugation differ in inflection from the regular verbs of that conjugation. Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active of *capiō*, *take* (661).

a. Wherein does the inflection of *capiō* differ from that of *regō* in the present? in the imperfect? in the future?

b. Verbs in *-io*, with the infinitive in *-ere*, are conjugated like *capiō*. Like *capiō* inflect in the same tenses *fugiō* and *iaciō* (176).

176.

VOCABULARY

ā (ab), *prep. with abl.*, away from,
from, by. (*avert*)

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward
(*adhere*)

conloquium, *conlo'qui*, *n.*, confer-
ence, interview (*colloquial*)

ē (ex), *prep. with abl.*, out of,
from (*exit*)

mūrus, *-i*, *m.*, wall (*mural*)

pēs, *pedis*, *m.*, foot (*pedal*)
capiō, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captus*, take
capture, receive (*captive*)

dīmittō, *dīmittere*, *dīmisi*, *dīmis-*
sus, send away (*dismiss*)

fugiō, *fugere*, *fūgī*, *fugitūrus*, flee,
run away (*fugitive*)

iaciō, *iacere*, *iēcī*, *iactus*, throw,
hurl, cast, fling (*reject*)

a. *Ab* and *ex* are used instead of *ā* and *ē* before words beginning with a vowel or *h*; before consonants either *ā* or *ab*, *ē* or *ex* may be used.

177. The Ablative of Place from Which.

1. *Militēs ab vīcō properant*, *the soldiers are hastening away from the village.*

2. *Militēs ex vīcō properant*, *the soldiers are hastening out of the village.*

3. *Militēs dē vīcō properant*, *the soldiers are hastening from (down from) the village.*

a. Observe that the phrases *ab vicō*, *ex vicō*, and *dē vicō* denote the place from which the motion is directed. This usage is known as the *Ablative of Place from Which*. *Ab vicō* (1) indicates that the soldiers started from the vicinity of the village; while *ex vicō* (2) indicates that they started from some point or place *within* the village.

178. Rule for the Ablative of Place from Which. Place from which is expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*).

179. The Accusative of Place to Which.

1. *Lēgātōs in oppidum mīsērunt*, they sent ambassadors into the town.
2. *Lēgātōs ad oppidum mīsērunt*, they sent ambassadors to the town.

a. Observe that the phrases *in oppidum* and *ad oppidum* denote the place to which the motion is directed. This usage is known as the *Accusative of Place to Which*.

180. Rule for the Accusative of Place to Which. Place to which is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*.

EXERCISES

1. Capiet, capit, capiunt.
2. Iaciō, iaciam, iaciēbam.
3. Cēpērunt, iēcīt, iēcīmus.
4. Fūgimus, fugimus, dīmisimus.
5. Ex conloquiō fugiunt.
6. Ab vicō in agrōs fugient.
7. Dē oppidō ad ōceanum fūgit.
8. Qui litterās ad rēgem mīsērunt?
9. Dē mūris eius oppidi pīla iēcērunt.
10. Dēfessōs militēs ex proeliō dimisit.
11. Cūr ab eō locō fugis?
12. Carrōs nostrōs capient.

1. He will hurl, they will hurl, they hurl.
2. You throw, you will throw, you have thrown.
3. They wounded the feet of the horsemen.
4. I shall hasten from Italy into the province.
5. Both women and girls were fleeing from the fields.
6. They have hastened from Germany into Italy.
7. He led the tribune to the conference.

LESSON XXV

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE · PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES EXPRESSING CAUSE

183.

VOCABULARY

centuriō, centuriōnis, *m.*, centurion
corpus, corporis, *n.*, body (*cor-*
poral)¹
doleō, dolēre, dolui, dolitūrus,
grieve (*doleful*)
explōrātor, explōrātōris, *m.*, scout
(*explore*)
homō, hominis, *m.*, man (*homicide*)

inopia, -ae, *f.*, want, lack
ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of
pater, patris, *m.*, father (*paternal*)
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account
of
soror, sorōris, *f.*, sister (*sorority*)
vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound (*vul-*
nerable)

a. Decline centuriō miser, corpus magnum, homō dēfessus, id vulnus.

184. The Ablative of Cause.

1. Lēgātus militem virtūte laudāvit, *the lieutenant praised the soldier for (because of, on account of) his valor.*
2. Peditēs viā longā sunt dēfessī, *the foot soldiers are tired out with (from, because of) the long march.*

a. Observe that the ablatives **virtūte** and **viā** denote *cause* or *reason*. Observe the various prepositions used in translating these ablatives: *for, with, from, because of, on account of*. This ablative answers the question *why?* and is known as the *Ablative of Cause*.

185. Rule for the Ablative of Cause. *The ablative without a preposition is used to express cause.*

186. Prepositional Phrases expressing Cause. Cause may also be expressed by a prepositional phrase consisting of *ob* or *propter* with the accusative, or of *dē* or *ex* with the ablative:

¹ See 171, *a.*

1. **Lēgātus mīlitem ob (propter) virtūtem laudāvit,** *the lieutenant praised the soldier on account of his courage.*
 2. **Multis dē causīs in Italiam properābunt,** *for many reasons they will hurry into Italy.*
- a. Observe the translation of **dē** in the phrase **dē causīs**.

EXERCISES

- 187.** 1. **Multis dē causīs Rōmānī auxilium nōn mīsērunt.**
 2. **Lapidibus pīlisque eōs hominēs vulnerāvērunt.** 3. **Multa vulnera in capitibus et in corporibus habent.** 4. **Hodiē patrēs vulneribus filiōrum dolēbunt.** 5. **Dux noster magnā victōriā centuriōnēs laudābit.** 6. **Periculum explōrātōrum militēs terruit.** 7. **Tum in mūrōs oppidi ob iniūriās nōn fugiēbātis.** 8. **Propter inopiam cibī¹ magnō in periculō fuimus.** 9. **Lēgātus equitēs et peditēs ad conloquium dūxit.**

- 188.** 1. We have often been tired because of wounds. 2. I shall praise our soldiers because of their courage and zeal. 3. Our fathers will fight for a long time and will capture much booty. 4. Which centurion was throwing javelins down from the wall? 5. On account of a lack of food and water Marcus and Galba, the centurions, did not fight with courage. 6. My sister is now grieving because the women of Britain are wretched. 7. In the meantime the scouts related the commands of the general.



CENTURIO

¹ This is a new usage of the genitive case. As used here, the genitive denotes that of which something consists or is made. It is called the *Genitive of Material*.

LESSON XXVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION: *I*-STEMS

189. The Third Declension: *i*-Stems. Certain nouns of the third declension have *i*-stems. These include :

1. Nouns which end in **-is** or **-ēs** in the nominative singular and have no more syllables in the genitive singular than in the nominative.
2. Neuters ending in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**.
3. Nouns ending in **-ns** or **-rs**.
4. Monosyllables ending in **-s** or **-x**, with a consonant preceding the **-s** or **-x**.

These nouns show the following peculiarities of declension :

1. The genitive plural ends in **-ium**.
2. The accusative plural of masculines and of feminines ends in **-is** or **-ēs**.
3. The nominative and the accusative plural of neuters end in **-ia**.
4. The ablative singular of neuters and of a few other words ends in **-i**.

The declension of nouns having *i*-stems is illustrated by the following paradigms :

<i>hostis</i> , m., <i>enemy</i>	<i>mare</i> , n., <i>sea</i>	<i>cohors</i> , f., <i>cohort</i>	<i>mōns</i> , m., <i>mountain</i>
STEM <i>hosti-</i>	STEM <i>marī-</i>	STEM <i>cohorti-</i>	STEM <i>monti-</i>
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i> hos'tis	ma're	co'hors	mōns
<i>Gen.</i> hos'tis	ma'ris	cohor'tis	mon'tis
<i>Dat.</i> hos'ti	ma'rī	cohor'tī	mon'tī
<i>Acc.</i> hos'tem	ma're	cohor'tem	mon'tem
<i>Abl.</i> hos'te	ma'rī	cohor'te	mon'te

·PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hos'tēs	ma'ria	cohor'tēs	mon'tēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hos'tium	ma'rīum	cohor'tīum	mon'tīum
<i>Dat.</i>	hos'tibus	ma'rībus	cohor'tībus	mon'tībus
<i>Acc.</i>	hos'tīs (-ēs)	ma'ria	cohor'tīs (-ēs)	mon'tīs (-ēs)
<i>Abl.</i>	hos'tibus	ma'rībus	cohor'tībus	mon'tībus

a. For the guidance of the learner, in the succeeding vocabularies nouns having i-stems will be followed by the stem.

b. Decline each noun in 190.

190.

VOCABULARY

cīvis, cīvis (cīvi-), *m.*, citizen (*civil*)
 cohōrs, cohōrtis (cohōrti-), *f.*, cohort
 collis, collis (colli-), *m.*, hill
 fīnis, fīnis (fini-), *m.*, end; *plur.*,
 territories (*finish*)
 hostis, hostis (hosti-), *m.*, enemy
 (*hostile*)
 ignis, ignis (igni-), *m.*, fire (*ignite*)

mare, maris (mari-), *n.*, sea (*mari-*
time)
 mōns, montis (monti-), *m.*, mountain (*mount*)
 nāvis, nāvis (nāvi-), *f.*, ship (*navi-*
gate)
 urbs, urbīs (urbi-), *f.*, city (*urban*)

EXERCISES

191. 1. Victōria hostium cīvis urbīs Rōmae terruit. 2. Collīs et montīs Italiae nōn vīdī. 3. Explōrātōrēs et centuriōnēs ex fīnībus Sabinōrum fūgērunt. 4. Rōmānī multās nāvīs et nāvīgia in marī habuērunt. 5. Magnō periculō cīvēs cībūm frūmentumque in urbēm portant. 6. Cohortēs quoque mittēmus et hostis superābimus. 7. Propinquū montī erat oppidū. 8. Virtūs cīvīum grāta duci fuit.

192. 1. Have we many ships to-day? 2. Formerly they lived on the hills and mountains. 3. The territories of the Romans were wide. 4. These citizens are not fit for war. 5. Our soldiers have captured many cities of Greece. 6. Who are throwing javelins down from the walls of the cities? 7. Boys see great fires in the city.

LESSON XXVII

THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

193. Prepositions with the Accusative. The following prepositions are used with the accusative:

ad, to, toward, against (<i>adverse</i>)	among (of more than two objects) (<i>intervene</i>)
ante, before, in front of (<i>antecedent</i>)	ob, on account of, because of
apud, near, with, among	per, through (<i>perennial</i>)
contrā, against (<i>contradict</i>)	post, after, behind (<i>postpone</i>)
in, into, against (<i>inspire</i>)	propter, on account of, because of
inter, between (of two objects),	trāns, across (<i>transatlantic</i>)

194. Prepositions with the Ablative. The following prepositions are used with the ablative:

ā, ab, away from, from, by (<i>ablative</i>)	in, in, at, on (<i>insist</i>)
cum, with (<i>compete</i>)	prō, in front of, in behalf of (<i>protect</i>)
dē, down from, concerning (<i>depose</i>)	sine, without (<i>sinecure</i>)
ē, ex, out of, from (<i>expose</i>)	

a. Which preposition is used with both cases? With what difference in meaning?

b. Learn the meanings of all these prepositions.

195. Methods of saying "to," "on account of," "because of," and "with" in Latin:

a. *To*: If the phrase expresses the *indirect object*, use the dative. If the phrase occurs with a verb of *motion* (as *mittō*), use **ad** or **in** with the accusative.

b. *On account of, because of*: Use either **ob** or **propter** with the accusative, or use the ablative.

Remember that the preposition **dē** or **ex** is used in certain phrases (as, **multis dē causis**, *for many reasons*).

c. *With*: If the phrase expresses *means*, use the ablative.

If the phrase expresses *manner*, use the ablative with **cum**; omit **cum**, if you wish, when there is an adjective in the phrase.

If the phrase expresses *accompaniment*, use the ablative with **cum**.

If the phrase expresses *cause*, use either **ob** or **propter** with the accusative, or use the ablative of cause.



EQUES ROMANUS

196. Adjectives used as Nouns.

Adjectives are often used as nouns (III, f); as, **amicus**, -ī, m., *a friend*, from **amicus**, a, -um, *friendly*; **multa**, -ōrum, n., *many things*, from **multī**, -ae, -a, *many*. So also **finitimī**, *neighbors*, and **nostrī**, *our men*.

EXERCISES

197. 1. **Nostrī centuriōnem** inter captivōs vīdērunt. 2. **Finitimī** propter eam victoriā Rōmānōrum dolent. 3. Cūr cohortēs per silvās ad oppidum fugiēbant? 4. Cum cūrā vestrās filiās librīs docuistis. 5. Equitēs et peditēs ante portam sunt. 6. Sine periculō in urbe manēbimus. 7. Atque multa ex eā urbe portāvērunt. 8. Trāns agrum lātum explorātōrēs dūcit. 9. In prōvinciā cum multis militib⁹ fuit.

198. 1. After this battle he will send our men into Germany. 2. They captured the town without help. 3. The neighbors were fighting bravely against the enemy. 4. In front of the town was a hill. 5. Near the lieutenant a messenger was waiting. 6. We shall hurry through Italy and shall spend the winter among those mountains.

LESSON XXVIII

READING LESSON

199.

VOCABULARY

exemplum, -i, n., example	tergum, -i, n., back; <i>ā</i> <i>tergō</i> , in the rear
factum, -i, n., act, deed (<i>fact</i>)	terror, terrōris, m., terror, fear
Horātius, Horāti, m., Horatius, a Roman	Tiberis, -is (acc. -im), m., Tiber, a river
nam, conj., for	timidus, -a, -um, fearful (<i>timid</i>)
paucī, -ae, -a, plur., few, only a few (<i>paucity</i>)	dēfendō; dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēn- sus, defend (<i>defense</i>)
pōns, pontis (ponti-), m., bridge (pontoon)	obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obseßus, besiege
Porsena, -ae, m., Porsena, a king of Etruria	servō, servāre, servāvī, servātus, save, protect (<i>preserve</i>)
Sublicius, -a, -um, Sublician (rest- ing on piles)	sustineō, sustinēre, sustinūi, sus- tentus, hold up, sustain, hold in check
tandem, adv., at last, finally	

HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT

200. Porſena, Rōmānōrum hostis, rēx fuit clārus. Ōlim urbem
Rōmam obsidēbat. Magnus erat terror Rōmānōrum, quod Por-
senā multōs militēs habēbat. Timidae fēminaē in templis deōs
adōrābant. Sed virtūs validi virī Rōmam dēfendit. Nām paucis
cum sociis prō ponte Subliciō Horātius hostis sustinuit. Cīvēs
interim *ā* *tergō* pontem solvunt et rescindunt (*break down*).
Tum sociōs Horātius dimittit et pontem contrā hostis dēfendit.
Tandem dēcidit pōns, et inter pila hostium Horātius in Tiberim
dēsilit (*jumps down*) et ad sociōs natat. Id exemplum virtūtis
Rōmam servāvit. Hodīe facta Horāti laudāmus.

201.

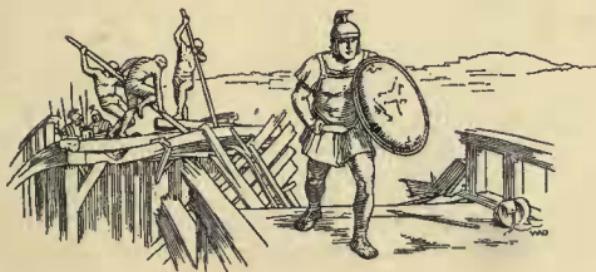
VOCABULARY

contendō, contendere, contendī, con-	incolō, incolere, incoluī, ——, dwell
tentus, struggle (<i>contend</i>)	in, inhabit
cotidiānus, -a, -um, daily	magnopere, <i>adv.</i> , greatly
ferē, <i>adv.</i> , almost	nātiō, nātiōnis, <i>f.</i> , race, people,
Gallia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Gaul (<i>Gallic</i>)	tribe (<i>national</i>)
Gallus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , a Gaul (inhabitant of Gaul)	nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also
Germāni, -ōrum, <i>m. plur.</i> , Germans	Rhēnus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , Rhine (<i>Rhenish</i>)
Hispāni, -ōrum, <i>m. plur.</i> , Spaniards	timeō, timēre, timuī, ——, fear,
Hispānia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Spain	dread

DE NATIONIBUS EUROPAE

202. Hispānia et Gällia et Germānia erant nātiōnēs Eurōpae. Proxima ōceanō erat Hispānia. Galli inter Hispāniām et Germāniām, Germāni trāns Rhēnum incolēbant. Germāni paucōs vīcōs etiam in Galliā habēbant. Quod eae nātiōnēs hostēs erant, Rōmāni cum Hispānis et Gallis et Germānis saepe pugnāvērunt.

Inter Galliam et mare erat nova prōvincia Rōmae. Incolae eius prōvinciae iniūriās Gallōrum diū sustinuērunt. Tandem ab Rōmānis auxilium postulāvērunt; nam Helvētiōs finitimōs magnopere timēbant. Helvētiī nōn sōlum prōvinciae sed etiam Germānis inimīci erant et cum Germānis cotidiānī ferē proeliīs contendēbant.



HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT

FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS XXII-XXVIII

203. Give the English meanings of the following words :

ā, ab	dēcidō	homō	nāvis	rēx
ad	dēfendō	hostis	nōn sōlum . . .	servō
ante	dīmittō	iaciō	sed etiam	sine
apud	dolō	iam	ob	solvō
capiō	dux	ignis	obsideō	soror
caput	ē, ex	incolō	pater	sustineō
centuriō	eques	inopia	paucī	tandem
cīvis	et . . . et	inter	pedes	tergum
cohors	exemplum	lapis	per	terror
collis	explōrātor	magnopere	pēs	timeō
cōfirmō	factum	mare	pōns	timidus
conlōquium	ferē	mīles	post	trāns
contendō	fingō	mōns	postulō	urbs
contrā	fīnis	mūrus	propter	virtūs
corpus	fortiter	nam	-que	volō
cotīdiānus	fugiō	nātiō	quoque	vulnus

204. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

sister	back	after	on account of, because of
few, only a few	wall	and	near, with, among
fly	without	father	conference, interview
both . . . and	bridge	head	to, toward, against
across	enemy	daily	from, away from
hill	now	defend	not only . . . but also
foot soldier	horseman	stone	throw, hurl, cast
ship	at last	before	valor, courage
grieve	soldier	centurion	leader, general
fear, dread	bravely	for	fashion, devise
mountain	citizen	fall down	dwell in, inhabit
city	terror	loose	between, among

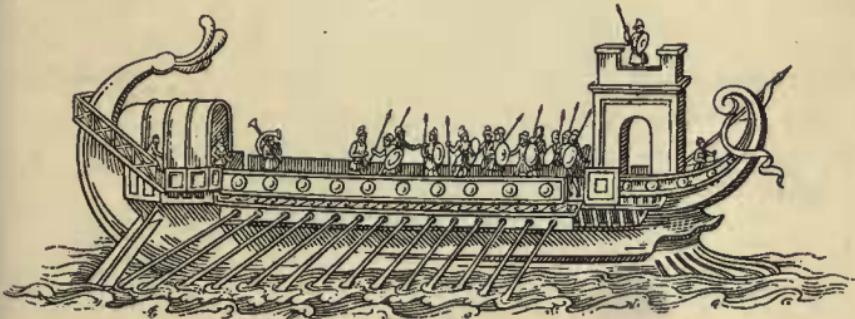
take, capture	king	sea	race, people, tribe
fire	greatly	foot	end, territories
struggle	scout	flee	strengthen, encourage
man	against	body	hold up, sustain, hold in check
wound	lack, want	besiege	act, deed
send away	demand	cohort	example
out of, from	through	almost	save, protect
fearful			

205. Decline each noun in 203. Give the principal parts of each verb. Conjugate each verb of the third conjugation in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active. Use each preposition in a Latin phrase. Which nouns have i-stems?

206. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 203. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

207. Give the rule, if there is one, for each of the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Ablative of place from which | 5. Prepositions with the accusative |
| 2. Accusative of place to which | |
| 3. Ablative of cause | 6. Prepositions with the ablative |
| 4. Prepositional phrases expressing cause | 7. Adjectives used as nouns |



NAVIS

LESSON XXIX

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

208. **Adjectives of the Third Declension.** Besides the adjectives of the first and second declensions there are also adjectives of the third declension. They use the endings of the third declension of nouns.

a. Some of these adjectives have the same form for the nominative singular of all three genders: as, **audāx**, *bold*. Others have the same form for the masculine and feminine nominative singular, but a different form for the neuter nominative singular: as, **brevis**, *breve, short*. Still others have a different form in the nominative singular for each gender: as, **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, *keen, eager*.

b. Learn the declension of **audāx**, **brevis**, and **ācer** (644).

c. Observe that the adjectives having two or three endings in the nominative singular have only -ī in the ablative singular. Adjectives of one ending more often have -ī than -e in the ablative. Compare the endings of these adjectives with the endings of nouns having i-stems (189). What differences are there?

d. Decline **proelium ācre**, *keen battle*; **corpus breve**, *short body*; **hostis audāx**, *bold enemy*; **vir ācer**, *bold man*.

209.

VOCABULARY

ācer, **ācris**, **ācre**, *keen, eager, sharp
(acrid)*
audāx, **audācis**, *bold (audacious)*
brevis, -e, *short, brief (brevity)*
Caesar, **Caesaris**, *m., Cæsar*
commūnis, -e, *common (community)*

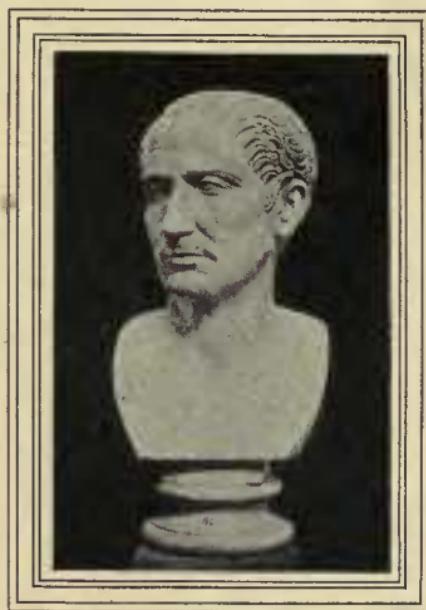
fortis, -e, *brave, strong (fortitude)*
gravis, -e, *heavy, severe (gravity)*
labor, **labōris**, *m., toil, hardship
(laborious)*
omnis, -e, *all, every, the whole
(omnipresent)*
potestās, **pōtestātis**, *f., power*

NOTE. In the vocabularies the genitive singular will be given of adjectives of one ending; but in the case of adjectives of two or of three endings all the forms of the nominative singular will be given.

EXERCISES

210. 1. Caesar dux audāx Rōmānōrum erat. 2. Magna fuit, potestās eius ducis. 3. Omnes militēs Caesarem magnopere amābant, quod hostis saepe superāvit. 4. Labōrēs militum in bellō saepe erant gravēs. 5. Hostēs multi et acrēs erant et multa pīla contrā Rōmānōs iaciēbant. 6. Sed nostrae cohortēs propter commūne periculum nōn fūgērunt. 7. Prō Rōmā fortiter pugnāvērunt. 8. Breve erat id bellum.

211. 1. The sword of the Romans was both short and heavy. 2. The foot soldier had a bold comrade. 3. Our men were carrying many heavy things. 4. To all my friends I shall give gifts. 5. The leader of the eager horsemen was grieving because of many hardships. 6. He dismissed all the tribunes from the conference.



CÆSAR

LESSON XXX

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

212. **The Fourth Conjugation.** Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active of **audiō** (662).

a. Compare the inflection of **audiō** with that of **capiō**. Observe that three forms of **audiō** in the present differ in quantity from the corresponding forms of **capiō**: **audīs**, **audīmus**, **audītis**. In other respects the inflection is identical with that of **capiō**.

b. Inflect like **audiō** in the same tenses **reperiō**, *find*, and **veniō**, *come*.

213.

VOCABULARY

flūmen, flūminis, *n.*, river (*fluent*)
nōbilis, *-e*, noble, of high birth
 (*nobility*)
audiō, audire, **audīvī, audītus**, hear
 (*audible*)

oppugnō, oppugnārē, oppugnāvī
oppugnātus, attack (*impugn*)
reperiō, reperīrē, repperī, repertus,
 find (*repertory*)
veniō, venīrē, vēnī, ventūrus, come
 (*invent*)

EXERCISES

214. 1. **Audiō**, **audiēbam**, **audiam**. 2. **Auditne?** **audiēbat**,
audiet. 3. **Audiunt**, **audiēbant**, **audient**. 4. **Audīmus**, **audīvīmus**,
audiētis. 5. **Audīvī**, **audīs**, **audīvērunt**. 6. **Venīs**, **venit**,
vēnistī. 7. **Vēnit**, **venīmus**, **vēnimus**. 8. **Reperīsne?** **repērīstis**,
reperiō. 9. **Repperī**, **reperit**, **repperit**.

215. 1. He has found, they have found, they came. 2. You are hearing, you did come, he heard. 3. We have heard, we were finding, we came. 4. You are coming, they were finding, we shall come. 5. I shall hear, we hear, they heard. 6. He came, he has come, they hear. 7. They will defend, they have attacked, he has defended.

216.

CONLOQUIUM

MĀRCUS. Hodiē fābulam dē Porsenā et Horātiō audīvī.

IŪLIA. Quis fuit Porsena? Rōmānusne erat?

MĀRCUS. Porsena, rēx nōbilis, Rōmānōrum hostis olim fuit.

Cum mīlitib⁹ audācib⁹ in finis Rōmānōrum vēnit, et urbem Rōmam oppugnābat.

IŪLIA. Fūgēruntne Rōmānī ob perīculum?

MĀRCUS. Magnum erat perīculum urbis et cīvium, quod hostēs erant fortēs et ācrēs, sed Rōmānī nōn fūgērunt.

IŪLIA. Cēpitne Porsena Rōmam?

MĀRCUS. Urbem nōn cēpit, quod virtūs validī virī cīvis dēfendēbat. Paucis cum sociis Horātius prō urbe fortiter pugnābat.

IŪLIA. Diūne hostēs sustinuit Horātius?

MĀRCUS. Nōn diū, quod hostēs erant multī, et multa pila iaciēbant. Tandem trāns flūmen ad socios natāvit. Rōmānī Horātium ob eam virtūtem laudāvērunt.



SOLDIERS MARCHING

LESSON XXXI

THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

217.

VOCABULARY

aestās, aestātis, <i>f.</i> , summer	secundus, -a, -um, second (<i>secondary</i>)
annus, -i, <i>m.</i> , year (<i>annual</i>)	tempus, temporis, <i>n.</i> , time (<i>temporal</i>)
decem, <i>adj.</i> , indecl., ten (<i>decimal</i>)	gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, manage,
hiems, hiemis, <i>f.</i> , winter	carry on (<i>vicegerent</i>)
hōra, -ae, <i>f.</i> , hour (<i>horoscope</i>)	prīmā lūce, at dawn
lūx, lūcis, <i>f.</i> , light (<i>translucent</i>)	bellum gerere, carry on war, wage
nox, noctis (<i>nocti-</i>), <i>f.</i> , night (<i>nocturnal</i>)	war
prīmus, -a, -um, first (<i>primary</i>)	

218. The Ablative of Time.

1. Hominēs aestāte et hieme labōrant, *men toil in summer and in winter.*
2. Decem annis Caesar multa bella gessit, *within ten years Cæsar carried on many wars.*

a. Observe that these ablatives are expressions of time. They answer the questions *when?* *in* or *within what time?* This usage of the ablative is known as the *Ablative of Time*. It may be translated by a phrase beginning with *in*, *at*, *within*, or *during*.

219. *Rule for the Ablative of Time.* *The time at which or within which a thing happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

EXERCISES

220. 1. Hieme venti in mari sunt gravēs. 2. Aestāte agricolae in agrīs labōrabant. 3. Prīmā lūce ad Caesarem venient. 4. Caesar bellum fortibus cum hostibus gessit. 5. Omnēs

prōvinciās paucis annis superāvit. 6. Quō tempore noctis in urbem vēnisti? 7. Secundā hōrā proelī decem explōrātōrēs capiunt. 8. Nūntius eō tempore lēgātō litterās dēmōnstrāvit.

✓ 221. 1. Welcome summer will come in a short time. 2. At the second hour of the night we heard these commands. 3. He found ten wounds on the body of the foot soldier. 4. At dawn Cæsar sent this cohort between the hill and the mountain. 5. They all fled from the province in the first year of the war. 6. Why did they not carry on war with the Romans in the winter?

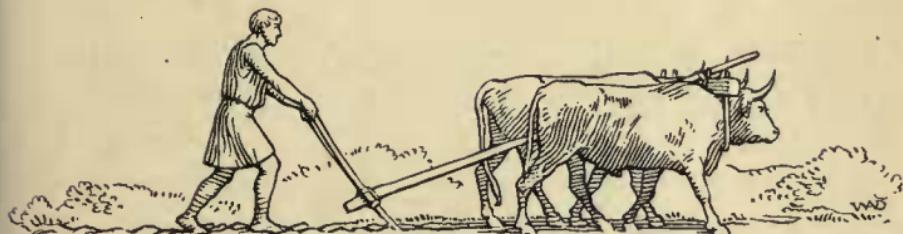
LACONIC SPEECHES¹

222. 1. Amicus ōlim Spartānum rogāvit: "Cūr mūrōs nōn habet Sparta?" Spartānus respondit: "Nostra urbs mūrōs optimōs (*the very best*) habet, virtūtem incolārum fortium."

2. Rēx Spartānus ōlim dixit: "Mei cīvēs numquam rogāvērunt, 'Quot sunt hostēs?' sed, 'Ubi sunt?'"

3. Hostis ante pugnam Spartānō dixit: "Sōlem propter plōrum multitudinem et sagittārum nōn vidēbitis." "In umbrā igitur pugnābimus," respondit Spartānus.

¹ The meanings of words that are not given in the vocabularies of the lessons may be found in the general vocabulary.



AESTATE AGRICOLA IN AGRIS LABORAT

LESSON XXXII

THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

223. The Formation of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses. The pluperfect (xxxiii, b) and the future perfect (xxxiii, b) indicative active of *amō* are inflected as follows:

PLUPERFECT

1. <i>amā'veram</i> , <i>I had loved</i>	<i>amāverā'mus</i> , <i>we had loved</i>
2. <i>amā'verās</i> , <i>you had loved</i>	<i>amāverā'tis</i> , <i>you had loved</i>
3. <i>amā'verat</i> , <i>he had loved</i>	<i>amā'verant</i> , <i>they had loved</i>

FUTURE PERFECT

1. <i>amā'verō</i> , <i>I shall have loved</i>	<i>amāve'rīmus</i> , <i>we shall have loved</i>
2. <i>amā'veris</i> , <i>you will have loved</i>	<i>amāve'rītis</i> , <i>you will have loved</i>
3. <i>amā'verit</i> , <i>he will have loved</i>	<i>amā'verint</i> , <i>they will have loved</i>

a. Observe that the pluperfect is formed by adding the imperfect of **sum** (108) to the perfect stem; and the future perfect by adding the future of **sum** to the perfect stem. One form, however, is not spelled as it is in the inflection of **sum**. Which form?

b. The tense sign of the pluperfect is *-erā-*; of the future perfect, *-eri-*.

c. What are the perfect stems of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, and **sum**? Inflect the pluperfect and future perfect tenses of these verbs, and of the verbs in 203.

d. What auxiliary verbs (iv, f) are to be used in translating these tenses? What English tense is the same as the pluperfect?

e. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect use the perfect stem, and so belong to the perfect system of the verb. Make synopses (671) in this system of the model verbs.

224.

VOCABULARY

civitās, civitātis, *f.*, state, clan
 Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Labienus, a Roman officer
 populus, -ī, *m.*, people (*populatōn*)

prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*, chief (*principal*)
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman
 tēlum, -ī, *n.*, weapon

EXERCISES

225. 1. Ēmerint, gesseram, hiemāverātis. 2. Dēmōnstrāverant, audiveris, superāverāmus. 3. Tenuerō, complēveram, armāverās. 4. Habitāveris, vocāverat, mānserō. 5. Nārrāverātis, miserās, fūgerimus. 6. Exspectāveram, doluerō, cōnfirmanverit. 7. Sustinuerat, rēxeram, properāveris. 8. Labiēnus prīcipem virtūte laudāverat. 9. Fortis homō amicōs multōs et ācrīs habuerit. 10. Caesar bella nōn sōlum in Galliā sed etiam in Britanniā gesserat. 11. Quō tempore noctis arma cēperis? 12. Galli oppida magnā cum virtūte dēfenderant. 13. Populus Rōmānus cīvēs eius cīvitātis liberāverat.



A GALLIC CHIEFTAIN

226. 1. We shall have frightened, you (*sing.*) had come, you (*plur.*) will have dismissed. 2. He will have fought, he had captured, they had defended. 3. We had led, they will have wounded, he will have thrown. 4. You (*sing.*) will have built, we had found, they will have carried.

5. The Roman people had long held the Gauls in check. 6. The chiefs had called together all the clans. 7. Labienus will have found many weapons in that place. 8. The Gauls had waited for aid. 9. At last we had attacked that hill.

LESSON XXXIII

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HIC* AND *ILLE* · PLACE FROM WHICH AND TO WHICH, IN NAMES OF TOWNS

227. The Demonstratives *Hic* and *Ille*. Review the declension of *is* (654), and learn the declension of *hic* and *ille* (654).

a. Decline *hic pīnceps*, *haec cīvitās*, *hoc tēlum*, *ille Gallus*, *illa nox*, and *illud tempus*.

228. The Distinction between *Is*, *Hic*, and *Ille*. *Is* is used indifferently for *this* or *that* without emphasis (148). *Hic* means *this*, and *ille* *that*, with a certain emphasis. *Hic* is applied to what is *near* the speaker in place, time, or thought. *Ille* is applied to what is *not near* the speaker in place, time, or thought. *Hic* and *ille*, like *is*, are used both as demonstrative adjectives and as demonstrative pronouns: as, *hoc dōnum meum*, *illud tuum est*, *this gift is mine*, *that is yours*. Demonstratives, when used as adjectives, regularly precede their nouns.

229. Place from Which and to Which, in Names of Towns. You have already learned that *place from which* is expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*) (178); and that *place to which* is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in* (180). If, however, the *place from which* or *to which* is the name of a town, the prepositions are omitted: as, *Rōmā vēnit*, *he came from Rome*; *Rōmam vēnit*, *he came to Rome*. *Domus*, *home*, also omits the preposition: *domum vēnit*, *he came home (homeward)*.

230. Complete Rules for Place from Which and to Which.
a. *Place from which* is usually expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*); but with the names of towns, and with *domus*, the preposition is omitted.

b. Place to which is usually expressed by the accusative with ad or in; but with the names of towns, and with domus, the preposition is omitted.

231.

VOCABULARY

Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur., Athens	frāter, frātris, m., brother (<i>fraternal</i>)
Capua, -ae, f., Capua	hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron. or adj., this
Carthāgō, -inis, f., Carthage	ille, illa, illud, dem. pron. or adj., that
Corinthus, -ī, f., Corinth ¹	
Delphī, -ōrum, m. plur., Delphi	
domum, acc., home, homeward	
domō, abl., from home	

EXERCISES

232. 1. Dux illōs equitēs peditēsque Capuam misit. 2. Tandem ex Italiā Carthāginem propter commūne periculum properāvit. 3. Hī militēs Athēnīs vēnerant et in Galliā pugnābant. 4. Secundā illius noctis hōrā nūntium Corinthum misit. 5. Illi lēgātī praedam Rōmam portāverant. 6. Populus audāx in hāc insulā habitāverat. 7. Huic centuriōnī amīcus fueram. 8. Ex hīs finibus omnēs principēs Delphōs fūgerant, quod illō tempore hostēs bellum parābant.

233. 1. From Delphi they had come to Athens. 2. From home my brother hastened to Corinth. 3. Cæsar had sent messengers through those states. 4. In these years the Gauls had been friendly to the Roman people. 5. These enemies will have fought with Cæsar with great courage. 6. This is a javelin, that is a sword.

¹ Most names of towns are feminine.

LESSON XXXIV

READING LESSON

VICTORIA CAESARIS

234. In Galliā multae et fortēs civitātēs erant. Prīncipēs hārum civitātum potestātem imperiaque Rōmānōrum timuērunt. Multōs mīlītēs igitur convocāverant et inter montis et collis Rōmānōs exspectābant.

Prīmō annō belli populus Rōmānus Caesarem contrā Gallōs mīsit. Is dux, cum Labiēnō et peditib⁹ et paucis equitibus,



MILITES ROMANI

ex Italiā aestāte properāvit et sine periculō in finīs Gallōrum vēnit. Hīs in locīs explōrātōrēs Caesaris hostēs repperērunt.

Prīmā lūce mīlītēs Rōmānī Gallōs oppugnāvērunt. Ācre erat proelium. Gallī lapidibus et tēlīs gravibus locum dēfendēbant. Nostrī pīla iaciēbant et gladiīs hostīs sustinēbant. Tandem Gallī dēfessi ob inopiam tēlōrum et vulnera trāns flūmen fūgērunt.

Decem annīs Caesar multa bella in Galliā gessit et multōs captīvōs Rōmam mīsit.

235.

VOCABULARY

Britannī, -ōrum, <i>m. plur.</i> , the Britons	nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvīgātūs, sail (<i>navigation</i>)
Cassivellaunus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , Cassivellaunus	occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātūs, seize, take possession of (<i>occupy</i>)
obses, obsidis, <i>m.</i> , hostage	vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātūs, lay waste (<i>devastate</i>)
tamen, <i>adv.</i> , yet, but, nevertheless	

DE CAESARE ET BRITANNIS

236. Quod Britannī ad Gallōs auxilium saepe miserant, Caesar in īsulam Britanniam nāvigāvit. Territi (*although frightened*) magnō numerō nāvium et virōrum, Britannī fortēs magnā cum virtūte prō patriā pugnāvērunt. Tandem tamen ab litorē fūgērunt. Post hoc proelium Rōmānī agrōs hostium vāstāvērunt et oppida occupāvērunt et multam praedam cēpērunt. Cassivellaunus, pīnceps Britannōrum, lēgātōs ad Caesarem misit. Caesar obsidēs postulāvit. Cum hīs obsidibus et captivis multis ex Britanniā in Galliam vēnit. Propter hanc victōriam magna erat potestās Rōmānōrum in Britanniā.



IN BRITANNIAM CAESAR NAVIGAT

LESSON XXXV

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

237. The Passive Voice. In the active voice the subject of the verb is *acting*; in the passive voice it is *acted on* (xxviii) : as

The general praises the soldier (active).

The soldier is praised by the general (passive).

238. The Present Indicative Passive of the First Conjugation.
The present indicative passive of **amō** is inflected as follows :

SINGULAR	PERS. ENDINGS	PLURAL	PERS. ENDINGS
1. a'mor, <i>I am loved</i> (<i>I am</i> -r <i>being loved</i>)		amā'mur, <i>we are loved</i> , -mur	
2. amā'ris, <i>you are loved</i>	-ris	amā'minī, <i>you are loved</i>	-minī
3. amā'tur, <i>he, she, it is loved</i>	-tur	ama'n'tur, <i>they are loved</i>	-ntur

a. Observe that these passive forms differ from the active only in the personal endings. The endings are added to the present stem **amā-** exactly as they were in the active voice.

239. The Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive of the First Conjugation. Compare the imperfect and the future active and passive of **amō** (658). Observe that the passive endings are added to the tense stems **amābā-** and **amābi-**, exactly as in the active voice, except in the second person singular of the future, where **-bi-** is changed to **-be-**. Learn these tenses of **moneō** (659).

EXERCISES

- 240.** 1. Amat, amātur. 2. Amābat, amābātūr. 3. Amābit, amābitur. 4. Amant, amantur. 5. Amābant, amābantur. 6. Amābuntne? amābunturne? 7. Amāmus, amāmur. 8. Moneō

moneor. 9. Monēbam, monēbar. 10. Monēbō, monēbor.
11. Monēbitis, monēbiminī. 12. Monētis, monēmini.

241. 1. You praise, you are praised. 2. They were praising, they were being praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. I teach, I am taught. 5. We teach, we are taught. 6. We shall teach, we shall be taught. 7. They teach, they are taught.

242. The Ablative of Agent.

1. *Labiēnus mīlitem laudat, Labienus praises the soldier.*
2. *Miles ab Labiēnō laudātur, the soldier is being praised by Labienus.*

a. Observe the changes made in turning the active sentence into the passive: (1) the object in the active becomes the subject in the passive; (2) the subject of the active is expressed in the passive by the ablative with *ab*. This ablative is known as the *Ablative of Agent*.

b. The *agent* is the person doing something. The ablative of *agent* should not be confused with the ablative of *means* (22), which has no preposition: as, *miles lapide vulnerātur, the soldier is wounded by a stone*; *miles ā Gallō vulnerātur, the soldier is wounded by a Gaul*.

243. Rule for the Ablative of Agent. *The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

EXERCISES

244. 1. Hic puer ā frātre meō laudābātur. 2. Haec praeda Rōmam ā Caesare portābitur. 3. Ā quō nōn amātur potestās? 4. Fābulae multae dē Britanniā ab iīs nūntiīs nārrābuntur. 5. Oppidum ab militibus oppugnātur. 6. In hāc pugnā decem hominēs ā Gallis vulnerantur. 7. Nāvibus frūmentum portābitur.

245. 1. All these Gauls will be held in check by those horsemen. 2. My brothers were praised by that boy. 3. Aid is being awaited by the enemy. 4. A few cohorts were seen by the chief. 5. Rome was loved by all the Romans.

LESSON XXXVI

THE RELATIVE *QUI*

246. The Relative *Qui*. The relative *qui*, *who*, *which*, *that*, is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. Compare the declension of the relative *qui* with that of the interrogative *qui* (154).

247. Agreement of the Relative with its Antecedent.

1. *Puellae quās laudāvimus bonae erant, the girls whom we praised were good.*
2. *Praemium quod ille homō portat laudātur, the reward which that man is bringing is praised.*
3. *Homō cuius gladium habeō est nauta, the man whose sword I have is a sailor.*

a. Observe that the relative (*ii, d*) in each sentence refers to a certain word. This word is called its *antecedent* (*ii, b*). Observe that the relative has the same gender and number as its antecedent, but that its case is different. Thus, in sentences 1 and 2 it is accusative because it is the object of *laudāvimus* or of *portat*; in sentence 3 it is genitive because it indicates the possessor of *gladium*.

b. A relative clause modifies its antecedent as an adjective modifies its noun.

248. Rule for the Agreement of the Relative. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number but its case depends on the way it is used in its own clause.

249.

VOCABULARY

cōnsilium, cōnsi'li, *n.*, advice, plan (*counsel*)

frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain (*frustrate*)

legiō, legiōnis, *f.*, legion (*legionary*)

māter, mātris, *f.*, mother (*matri-*
nal)

mercātor, mercātōris, *m.*, trader, merchant (*merchandise*)

qui, quae, quod, rel. *pron.*, who, which, that, as

turris, turris (turri-), *f.*, tower (*turret*)

EXERCISES

250. 1. Illa fēmina quam vidēs est māter Cornēliae. 2. Mer-
cātōrēs multa in Germāniam portant. 3. Hostēs ācrēs, ā quibus
nostra patria vāstātur, sunt Rō-
māni. 4. Iī hominēs, quōrum
virtūte et cōsiliis urbs tenē-
batur, domum ē bellō venient.
5. Turrēs, quae cum cūrā aedi-
ficābantur, ab hostibus vāstā-
buntur. 6. Obsidēs qui ā
Rōmānīs liberantur Athēnās
properābunt. 7. Dux legiōnis
quam Caesar trāns flūmen mīsit
erat Labiēnus.

251. 1. The weapons which
we have brought are not good.
2. This summer you will fight
with Caesar, who is defending
the province. 3. I shall praise
the plan by which that town is
being laid waste. 4. Caesar had
ten legions in the wars which he carried on with the Gauls.
5. The woman to whom I showed the way is the mother of
this unhappy hostage.



MATER CUM PUERIS

FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS XXIX-XXXVI

252. Give the English meanings of the following words :

ācer	decem	hōra	nox	quī
aestās	flūmen	ille	obses	reperiō
annus	fortis	labor	occupō	secundus
audāx	frāter	legiō	omnis	tamen
audiō	frūstrā	lūx	oppugnō	tēlum
brevis	gerō	māter	populus	tempus
cīvitās	gravis	mercātor	potestās	turris
commūnis	hic	nāvigō	pīmus	vāstō
cōnsilium	hiems	nōbilis	prīnceps	veniō

253. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

legion	this	find
come	brother	toil, hardship
that	who, which, that, as	sail
ten	all	advice, plan
summer	mother	in vain
hostage	second	short, brief
time	brave, strong	trader
year	hour	power
river	night	chief
winter	bold	tower
first	manage, carry on, wage	yet, nevertheless
common	state, clan	heavy
light	noble, of high birth	people
weapon	attack	seize, take possession of
hear	keen, eager, sharp	lay waste

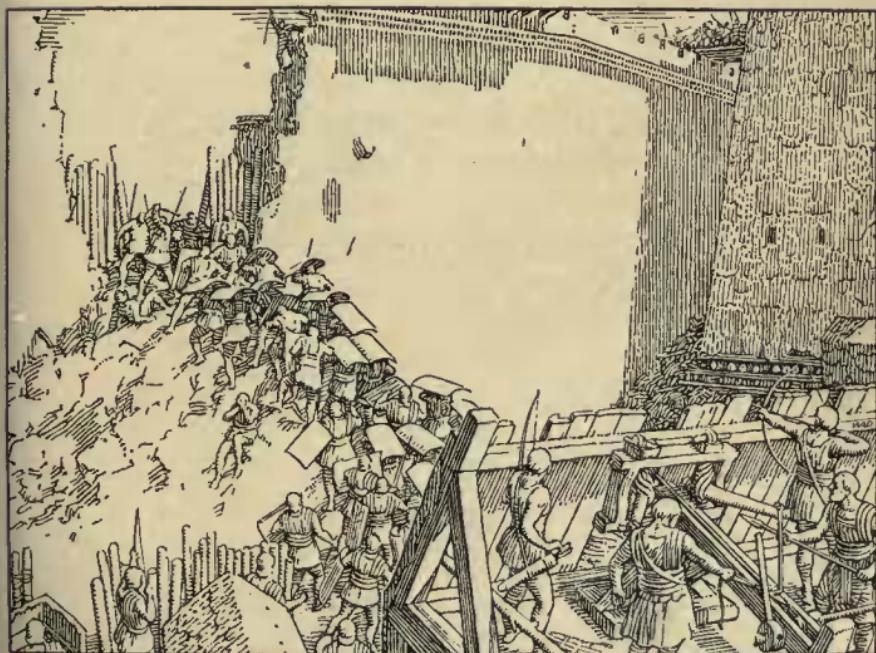
254. Decline each noun and each adjective in 252. Give the principal parts of each verb. Conjugate each verb of the fourth

conjugation throughout the indicative mood. Make synopses (671) of each verb in the third person singular and plural. Decline **hic**, **ille**, and **qui**.

255. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 252. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

256. Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

1. Ablative of time
- 2: Place from which, in names of towns
3. Place to which, in names of towns
4. Ablative of agent
5. Agreement of the relative



HOSTES CONTRA ROMANOS OPPIDUM DEFENDUNT

LESSON XXXVII

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *REGO* AND *CPIO*

257. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of *Regō* and *Cpiō*. Review the present, imperfect, and future indicative active of *regō* and *cpiō*, and learn the passive of the same tenses (660, 661).

a. Observe that to form the passive you have only to substitute the passive personal endings for the active, except in one form. Which one is that, and what is the change?

b. Like *regō* inflect in both voices the same tenses of *dūcō*, *mittō*, and *gerō*; inflect *iaciō* and *recipiō* like *cpiō*.

EXERCISES

258. 1. Regit, regitur. 2. Regēbat, regēbātur. 3. Reget, regētur. 4. Regunt, reguntur. 5. Regent, regentur. 6. Regis, regeris. 7. Regēbās, regēbāris. 8. Regēs, regēris. 9. Regimus, regimur. 10. Regitis, regimini. 11. Regam, regar. 12. Capiunt, cōpiuntur. 13. Capiēbat, capiēbātur. 14. Capiet, capiētur. 15. Capient, capientur. 16. Capiēs, capiēris. 17. Capis, caperis. 18. Capiēbās, capiēbāris.

259. 1. He leads, he is led. 2. They will lead, they will be led. 3. They lead, they are led. 4. You lead, you are led. 5. We shall lead, we shall be led. 6. We send, we are sent. 7. Is he sent? are they sent? 8. He will send; he will be sent. 9. You are sent, you will be sent. 10. They were waging, I was waging. 11. We wage, we shall wage. 12. We throw, we are thrown. 13. We threw, we were being thrown. 14. Who receives? who was being received?

260.

VOCABULARY

castra, -ōrum, n. plur., camp
(*Lancaster*)

cōsul, cōsulis, m., consul (*con-*
sular)

nōn iam, adv., no longer

pāx, pācis, f., peace (*pacify*)

recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus,
receive, welcome (*recipient*)

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, defeat,
conquer (*invincible*)

EXERCISES

261. 1. Lēgātī dē pāce in castra cōsulis vēnērunt. 2. Iam ad cōsulem dūcuntur hī lēgātī. 3. Bene ā cōsule recipientur. 4. Nōn iam urbs hostium dēfenditur. 5. Tēla quae dē mūris iaciēbantur multōs vulnerābant. 6. Militēs cōsulis nōn saepe ā Gallis vincuntur. 7. Pāx populō Rōmānō grāta erit.

262. 1. Labienus with only a few cohorts will be sent from Rome into Gaul. ✓ 2. Those towns of Gaul will be defended bravely. 3. The legion is being led out of the camp. 4. Many states of Gaul are being conquered to-day. 5. The new plans of our allies were being announced to the neighbors. 6. They will be received by Cæsar, who has conquered the Helvetians.



CASTRA ROMANA

LESSON XXXVIII

THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

263. The Personal Pronouns. The personal pronouns (ii, 2) are *ego*, *I*; *tū*, *you*; *is*, *he*; *ea*, *she*; *id*, *it*.

In reality there is no pronoun of the third person in Latin. The demonstrative *is* (148, 228) is so often used as a personal pronoun that it may be classed as the pronoun of the third person. Sometimes the demonstratives *hic* and *ille* are similarly used. Learn the declension of the personal pronouns (652).

264. The Personal Pronouns as Subjects of Verbs. The personal pronouns are expressed as subjects only for emphasis, especially the emphasis of contrast: as, *ego tē laudō*, *tū mē nōn laudās*, *I praise you, you do not praise me*.

265. The Reflexive Pronouns. A reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of its clause (ii, h). Learn the declension of the reflexive pronouns (653).

266. The Use of the Reflexive Pronouns. The use of the reflexive pronouns is illustrated by the following sentences:

1. *Tū tē amās, you love yourself.*
2. *Omnēs hominēs sē amant, all men love themselves.*

a. Observe that *tē* and *sē* refer to the subjects of their sentences.

b. Remember that *is*, *he*; *ea*, *she*; and *id*, *it*, are used as personal pronouns, but not as reflexive pronouns; and that *sui* is always a reflexive pronoun, and not a personal pronoun.

267. Relative Clauses referring to Personal Pronouns.

Tū, qui venis, es amīcus meus, you, who are coming, are my friend.

a. Observe that the verb of the relative clause is in the same person as the antecedent.

268.

VOCABULARY

cotidiē, *adv.*, daily
 ego, *pers. pron.*, I (*egotistic*)
 interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, in-
 terfectus, kill
 is, ea, id, *pers. pron.*, he, she, it
 reliquus, -a, -um, rest of, remain-
 ing (*relic*)

reliquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the rest
 suī, *reflex. pron.*, of himself, her-
 self, itself, themselves
 tempestās, tempestātis, *f.*, weather,
 storm (*tempest*)
 tū, *pers. pron.*, you

EXERCISES

✓ 269. 1. Scūtum eius erat grave. 2. Amicī eōrum fuerant
 militēs. 3. Studium eārum laudātur. 4. Vōbiscum¹ propter
 tempestātem manēbō. 5. Contrā eōs bellum geritur. 6. Estne
 Mārcus tēcum? 7. Cum eā ambulābat. 8. Sine vōbis Athēnās
 properābunt. 9. Nōs sumus miserī, vōs aegrī et dēfessī estis.
 10. Omnia vestra cōnsilia nōbīs sunt grāta. 11. Pater et māter
 eius ab vōbis bene recipiēbantur. 12. Reliquī prīncipēs, quī
 sē armābant, ad conloquium nōn vēnērunt. 13. Itaque ad sē
 centuriōnem vocat et eī cōnsilium nārrat. 14. Cotidiē Caesar
 peditēs ē castrīs dūcēbat.

270. 1. His mother and my father saw you. 2. They are
 now with me. 3. To him, to her, to them I shall give rewards.
 4. Their camp is being attacked. 5. I shall hurry into town
 with you. 6. We shall free ourselves with severe hardship.
 7. She has wounded herself with her father's sword. 8. The
 rest will kill themselves. 9. Their towns are being laid waste
 by the Gauls this summer.

¹ The preposition *cum* is appended to the ablative of personal and reflexive
 pronouns in the manner of an enclitic (22); so usually to relative and inter-
 rogative pronouns.

LESSON XXXIX

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

271. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of *Audiō*. Review the active voice of *audiō* in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and learn the passive of the same tenses (662)

a. Like *audiō* inflect *impediō*, *hinder*, and *reperiō*, *find*, in the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

EXERCISES

272. 1. Audit, auditur. 2. Audiēbat, audiēbātur. 3. Audiet, audiētur. 4. Audīmus, audīmur. 5. Audiēmus, audiēmūr. 6. Audiam, audiar. 7. Audītis, audīminī. 8. Audiētis, audiēminī. 9. Audīs, audīris. 10. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 11. Audiunt, audiuntur. 12. Audiēbant, audiēbantur.

273. 1. I hinder, I am hindered. 2. I was hindering, I was being hindered. 3. I shall hinder, I shall be hindered. 4. They hinder, they are hindered. 5. They will hinder, they will be hindered. 6. He finds, he is found. 7. He found, he was found. 8. He will find, he will be found.

274.

VOCABULARY

aedificium, *aedifi'ci*, *n.*, building
(*edifice*)

Coriolānus, *-i*, *m.*, Coriolanus

maximē, *adv.*, greatly, very much
(*maximum*)

statim, *adv.*, at once

Veturia, *-ae*, *f.*, Veturia

Volsci, *-ōrum*, *m.*, Volscians

dicō, *dicere*, *dixī*, *dictus*, say (*dic-tion*)

impediō, *impedīre*, *impedīvī*, *impedītus*, hinder (*impede*)

incitō, *incitāre*, *incitāvī*, *incitātus*, arouse, impel (*incite*)

praebēō, *praebēre*, *praebūi*, *praebūtus*, cause, furnish, show

EXERCISES

VETURIA, MATER CORIOLANI

275. Urbī Rōmae ūlim magnum periculum ā Volscīs, qui erant populi Rōmānī hostēs audācēs, praebebātur. Volsci ā Coriolānō, Rōmānō, incitābantur et dūcēbantur. Iam aedificia multa in agrīs ab hostibus vāstābantur. Civēs sē armābant. Urbs cibō complēbatur ā cōnsule. Frūstrā hostēs impediēbantur. Tum periculō magnō Rōmānī mātrem Coriolānī dē pāce ad eum mīserunt, quod ea ab filiō maximē amābatur. Veturia, māter Coriolānī, in castra ad filium vēnit. In castris eum repperit. Coriolānus eam vīdit et dīxit, "Mea patria mē et sociōs meōs vīcit." Statim ab urbe fūgit cum hostibus.

276.

VOCABULARY

autem, *postpositive¹ conj.*, but, however, besides

perturbātus, disturb, throw into confusion (*perturbation*)

enim, *postpositive conj.*, for

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, put, place (*postpone*)

DE PERSEO

277. Dē Perseō multae fābulae nārrantur ā poētīs. Perseus filius fuit Iovis (642), rēgis deōrum. Avus eius Ācrisius fuit. Ille Perseum interficere volēbat²; nam propter imperia deōrum puerum timēbat. Cēpit igitūr eum adhūc infantem, et cum mātre in arcā posuit. Tum in mare arcām iēcit. Danaē, Persei māter, maximē timēbat, tempestās enim magna mare perturbābat. Perseus autem in sinū (*in the arms*) mātris dormiēbat.

¹ Never the first word in the sentence or clause.

² *interficere volēbat*, wished to kill. The infinitive used in this way is called a complementary infinitive (394).

LESSON XL

THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES · THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

278. The Possessive Adjectives. The possessive adjectives are as follows :

meus, -a, -um, <i>my</i>	tuus, -a, -um, <i>your</i> (sing.)
noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our</i>	vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> (plur.)
suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her, its, their</i> (<i>own</i>), used reflexively	

a. To show possession the possessive adjectives are used instead of the genitives *mei*, *tui*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, and *sui*. They may also be used as possessive pronouns : as, *mea*, *mine*; *nostrī*, *our men*.

279. The Distinction between *Suus* and the Possessive Genitive of *Is*.

1. Miles scūtum eius habet, *the soldier has his shield* (i. e. somebody else's shield).
2. Miles suum scūtum habet, *the soldier has his own shield*.

a. *Eius* (sentence 1) does not refer to the subject; *suum* (sentence 2) does refer to the subject. *Suus* is always reflexive, but the genitives of *is*, *ea*, *id* are never reflexive.

280. When Possessive Adjectives are used in Latin. When the meaning is clear, a possessive adjective is omitted unless emphatic : as,

1. Caesar militēs in castra redūxit, *Cæsar led his soldiers back into camp*.
2. Caesar suōs militēs in castra redūxit, *Cæsar led his (own) soldiers back into camp* (but the others he left outside).

281. The Ablative of Separation.

1. Hic homō cibō caret, *this man lacks* (is separated from) *food*.
2. Germāni Rōmānōs ā finibus suis prohibēbant, *the Germans were keeping the Romans away from their lands*.

a. Observe that the ablative is here used to denote that from which there is freedom, removal, or separation, or that which is lacking. The ablative so used answers the questions *from what?* *of what?* and is called the *Ablative of Separation*. It is of the same nature as the ablative of *place whence*.

282. Rule for the Ablative of Separation. Words signifying privation, removal, or separation are followed by the ablative without a preposition, or with the prepositions *ā* (ab), *dē*, *ē* (ex).

283.

VOCABULARY

posteā, <i>adv.</i> , afterwards	interclūsus, cut off, shut off (conclude)
suūs, -a, -um, his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)	privō, privāre, privāvī, privātus, keep from, deprive of (<i>priv- ation</i>)
careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus, lack, want (<i>caret</i>)	prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibui, pro- hibit, keep away (from), re- strain (<i>prohibit</i>)
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitū- rus, leave off, cease (<i>desist</i>)	
interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūsi,	

EXERCISES

- 284.** 1. Caesar autem suōs militēs trāns flūmen mīsit.
 2. Caesar eius frātrem in castris reperiet. 3. Ille vir aeger
 aquā privābātur. 4. Posteā ea civitās cibō et frūmentō carēbat.
 5. Ab aedificiis et pecūniā huius populī militēs diū prohibuit.
 6. Ob inopiam armōrum proeliō Germānī dēstītērunt. 7. Nostri,
 quī in castra Germānōrum properāverant, eōs tēlis privāvē-
 runt. 8. Flūmen nostrōs viā interclūdēbat. 9. Apud flūmen
 nāvigia ab hostibus eō tempore aedificābantur.

- 285.** 1. Our friends lacked money. 2. The enemy will de-
 fend their own buildings. 3. You will free us from care.
 4. Cæsar announced to his (men) his plans concerning peace.
 5. They will afterwards deprive the Germans of all power.
 6. The rest of the chiefs were being shut off from their towns,

LESSON XLI

THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

286. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of All Conjugations.

a. Review the principal parts of **amō**, and notice especially the perfect passive participle. Examine the formation of the perfect indicative passive (658). Observe that it is formed by using the present tense of **sum** with the perfect passive participle **amātus**. Those tenses which are formed with the help of the perfect passive participle belong to the participial system of the verb (671).

b. Examine the pluperfect and the future perfect indicative passive. Observe that they are formed by using the imperfect and the future of **sum** with the perfect passive participle.

c. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of all verbs are formed in the same way.

d. The participle **amātus** is declined like **bonus**; and so in the nominative singular and plural it is changed to agree with the subject of the verb in number and gender. These changes are made because a participle is an adjective in its nature. Observe these changes as illustrated in 287.

e. Recall the principal parts of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō**, and inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive of these verbs and of those in 252.

EXERCISES

287. 1. *Vir amātus est, fēmina amāta est, bellum amātum est.* 2. *Virī amātī sunt, fēminae amātæ sunt, bella amāta sunt.* 3. *Militēs monitī erant, puer monitus erit, oppidum monitum erat.* 4. *Agricola captus est, urbs rēcta est, prōvincia rēcta erat.* 5. *Captus sum, captus eram, captus erō.* 6. *Auditus es, auditū erās, auditus eris.* 7. *Auditī sumus, auditī erāmus, auditī erimus.*

288. 1. The Gaul was warned, had been warned, will have been warned. 2. The buildings have been taken, had been taken, will have been taken. 3. The territories had been ruled by the Germans. 4. The cities will have been defended. 5. And so we (*fem.*) shall have been heard.

289.

VOCABULARY

concilium, conci'li, <i>n.</i> , meeting (council)	imperātor, imperātōris, <i>m.</i> , general, commander (emperor)
ibi, <i>adv.</i> , there	mora, -ae, <i>f.</i> , delay (moratorium)
impedimentum, -i, <i>n.</i> , hindrance; plur., baggage (<i>impediment</i>)	verbum, -i, <i>n.</i> , word (verbal)

EXERCISES

290. 1. Multa in Italiā oppida ā Rōmānīs aedificāta sunt. 2. Pauci Germānī ibi tēlis nostrōrum interfectī sunt. 3. Tua verba ā mē audita erunt. 4. Eō tempore imperātor ab impedimentis carrisque interclūsus erat. 5. Bellum, quod ā Caesare gestum est, longum fuit. 6. Militēs, quī ab eō in Galliam missi sunt, frūmentō caruērunt. 7. Praeda, quae ab imperātōre nostrō capta erat, sine morā Rōmam portāta est. 8. In conciliō suis Caesar dixit, "Cōnsilia mea ab hostibus nōn impedita sunt."

IUPPITER PERSEUM SERVAT (CONTINUED FROM 277)

291. Iuppiter tamen haec omnia vidit, et filium suum servāre cōstituit (*determined to save*). Tranquillum igitur fēcit mare, et arcā ad īsulam Seriphum dūxit. Huius īsulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat.¹ Postquam¹ arca ad litus ducta est, Danaē in harēnā dormiēbat. Post breve tempus ā virō reperta est, et ad rēgem adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum bene recēpit, et eis sēdem tūtam in finibus suīs praebuit.

¹ Postquam introduces a subordinate clause of time (xx, e).

LESSON XLII

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

292. The Fourth Declension. Nouns of the fourth declension end in the nominative singular in **-us** or **-ū**. Those ending in **-us** are masculine, with a few exceptions; those ending in **-ū** are neuter. These nouns are inflected as follows:

	exercitus, m. army	cornū, n. horn, wing	CASE ENDINGS	
	SINGULAR		MASC.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	exer'citus	cor'nū	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	exer'citūs	cor'nūs	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	exerci'tuī (-ū)	cor'nū	-ui (-ū)	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	exer'citum	cor'nū	-um	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	exer'citū	cor'nū	-ū	-ū
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	exer'citūs	cor'nua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	exerci'tuum	cor'nuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	exerci'tibus	cor'nibus	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exer'citūs	cor'nua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	exerci'tibus	cor'nibus	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus

a. A few nouns of this declension may have the dative and the ablative plural in **-ubus**; such nouns in this book are **lacus**, *lake*, and **portus**, *harbor*.

b. **Domus**, *house*, and **manus**, *hand*, are the only feminine nouns of this declension used in this book; and **cornū** is the only neuter so used. Learn the declension of **domus**, which has forms of the second declension as well as those of the fourth (642).

c. Decline **exercitus magnus**, **mea manus**, and **cornū longum**.

293.

VOCABULARY

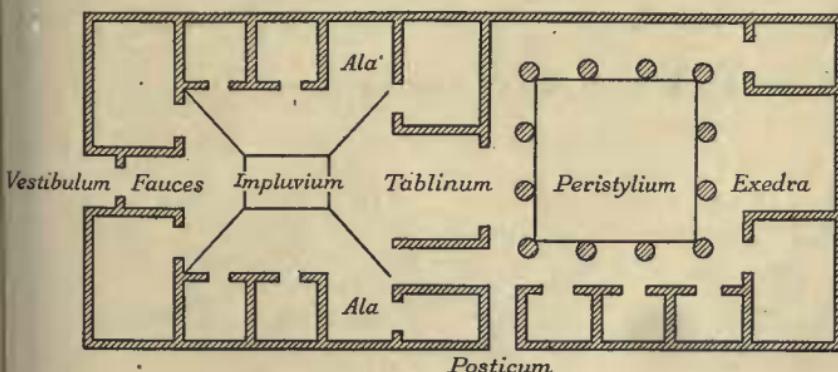
adventus, -ūs, *m.*, coming (*advent*)
 commeātus, -ūs, *m.*, supplies
 cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (of an army) (*cornucopia*)
 domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home (*dwelling*)
 exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army (*exercise*)

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake (*lake*)
 manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, handful, band (of men) (*manufacture*)
 palūs, palūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp
 portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor (*port*)
 mūniō, mūnire, mūnīvī, mūnitus, fortify (*munitions*)

EXERCISES

✓ 294. 1. Adventus legiōnum nōs dēlectat. 2. Noster exercitus tamen Germānōs commeātibus interclūsi. 3. Inter nostrōs et hostis erat lacus. 4. Cōnsulēs erant exercitum Rōmānōrum imperātōrēs. 5. In cornibus diū et fortiter pugnāverant. 6. Castra Labiēnī palūde et lacū mūniēbantur. 7. Graeciae in portubus nāvēs multās hieme vīdimus. 8. Manūs hostium spectāvimus.

✓ 295. 1. They fight both with feet and with horns. 2. Many lakes are seen by them among the mountains. 3. We had been delighted by the coming of the traders. 4. This house is mine, that is yours. 5. However, at daybreak they carried the supplies from the camp to the harbor. 6. Rome was at once fortified by the hands of the citizens. 7. Why are you hurrying home?



PLAN OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON XLIII

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

296. Degrees of Comparison. Latin adjectives have three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative. But in Latin, as in English, there are certain adjectives which are not compared.

POSITIVE

<i>lātus, -a, -um, wide</i> (BASE <i>lāt-</i>)
<i>brevis, -e, short</i> (BASE <i>brev-</i>)
<i>audāx, bold</i> (BASE <i>audāc-</i>)

COMPARATIVE

<i>lātiōr, lātiōs, wider</i>
<i>breviōr, breviōs, shorter</i>
<i>audāciōr, audāciōs, bolder</i>

SUPERLATIVE

<i>lātiōsissimus, -a, -um, widest</i>
<i>breviōsissimus, -a, -um, shortest</i>
<i>audāciōsissimus, -a, -um, boldest</i>

a. Observe that the comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive the endings *-iōr* for the masculine and the feminine, and *-iōs* for the neuter; the superlative by adding to the base of the positive *-iōsissimus, -iōsissima, -iōsissimum*.

b. Compare *cārus, grātus, longus, fortis, and gravis*.

c. The comparative may be translated *wider, more wide, rather wide, too wide*; the superlative *widest, most wide, very wide*.

297. The Declension of the Comparative. The comparative is declined as follows:

SINGULAR

M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>lātiōr</i>	<i>lātiōs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>lātiō'ris</i>	<i>lātiō'ris</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>lātiō'rī</i>	<i>lātiō'rī</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>lātiō'rem</i>	<i>lātiō's</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>lātiō're</i>	<i>lātiō're</i>

PLURAL

M. AND F.	N.
<i>lātiō'rēs</i>	<i>lātiō'ra</i>
<i>lātiō'rum</i>	<i>lātiō'rum</i>
<i>lātiō'ribus</i>	<i>lātiō'ribus</i>
<i>lātiō'rēs (-is)</i>	<i>lātiō'ra</i>
<i>lātiō'ribus</i>	<i>lātiō'ribus</i>

- a. The superlative is declined like **bonus** (643).
 b. Decline the positive, the comparative, and the superlative of the adjectives in 296, b.

298.

VOCABULARY

amicitia, -ae, f., friendship	senātus, -ūs, m., senate (<i>senator</i>)
equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry	faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, make ;
impetus, -ūs, m., attack (<i>impetuous</i>)	impetum facere, to make an attack; iter facere, to march, travel
iter, itineris, n., way, march, journey (642) (<i>itinerary</i>)	peto, petere, petivī (petii), petitus, seek, ask (<i>petition</i>)

EXERCISES

✓ 299. 1. Quod iter brevius est? 2. Quod iter brevissimum est? 3. Equitātus autem iter per vīcōs propinquōs fēcerat. 4. Germānī dē senātū Rōmānō pācem petivērunt. 5. Amicitia sociōrum populō Rōmānō grātissima erit. 6. Noster exercitus impetum in (*against, upon*) hostēs faciet. 7. Hoc flūmen est lātum, sed mare lātius ést. 8. Galli in bellō certē fortissimī erant. 9. Ubi cīvis fortiōrēs vīdistī?

✓ 300. 1. Your house is very new. 2. The general sent the cavalry by a longer way. 3. The summer in Britain is not very short. 4. This javelin is too heavy. 5. Peace, however, will be sought by all the clans of Gaul. 6. They are making an attack against the turret with little zeal. 7. The army was marching through the woods and swamps.



ROMAN SHOES

SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS XXXVII-XLIII

301. Give the English meanings of the following words:

adventus	ego	iter	praebeō
aedificium	enim	lacus	priūō
amicitia	equitātus	manus	prohibeō
autem	exercitus	maximē	recipiō
careō	faciō	mora	reliquī
castra	ibi	mūniō	reliquus
commeātus	impedimentum	nōn iam	senātus
concilium	impediō	palūs	statim
cōsul-	imperātor	pāx	sui
cornū	impetus	perturbō	suus
cotidiē	incitō	petō	tempestās
dēsistō	interclūdō	pōnō	tū
dīcō	interficiō	portus	verbum
domus	is	posteā	vincō

302. Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

daily	horn, wing	but, however, besides
senate	put, place	cause, furnish, show
say	I	seek, ask
army	camp	greatly, very much
lack, want	lake	keep from, deprive of
no longer	kill	he, she, it, they
for	hinder	disturb, throw into confusion
peace	make	leave off, cease
hand, band	meeting	harbor
cut off, shut off	delay	his (own), her (own), its (own)
you	the rest	rest of, remaining
at once	fortify	arouse, impel
house, home	afterwards	keep away, restrain

marsh, swamp	word	cavalry
weather, storm	consul	hindrance, baggage
receive, welcome	coming	general, commander
supplies	building	way, march, journey
there	attack	of himself, of herself, etc.
defeat, conquer	friendship	

303. Decline each noun in 301. Give the principal parts of each verb. Inflect those tenses of *dīcō*, *impediō*, *pōnō*, and *privō* which are formed from the present stem. Make synopses of each verb in 301 in the third person singular and plural. Decline *ego*, *is*, and *tū*.

304. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 301. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

305. Give the rule, if there is one, for each of the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

1. A personal pronoun of each person as the object of a verb
2. A personal pronoun of each person as the subject of a verb
3. A reflexive pronoun of the third person as the object of a verb
4. Ablative of separation



MILITES CASTRA MUNIUNT

LESSON XLIV

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -ER OR -LIS THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

306. The Comparison of Adjectives in -er. Adjectives ending in -er are compared as follows :

miser, misera, mise- rum, <i>wretched</i>	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>keen</i>	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um

a. Observe that the comparative of these adjectives is regular ; but the superlative is formed by adding -rimus, -rima, -rimum to the nominative masculine of the positive. Compare similarly *aeger*.

307. The Comparison of Adjectives in -lis. The comparative of the following adjectives ending in -lis is regular ; but the superlative is formed by adding -limus, -lima, -limum to the base of the positive. Learn their meaning and comparison.

facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilius, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i>	difficilius, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i>	similius, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i>	dissimilius, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um

Most other adjectives in -lis are compared regularly : as, *nōbilis*, *nōbiliar*, *nōbilissimus*.

308. The Partitive Genitive.

1. *Ille amīcus cōpiam pecūniae habet*, *that friend has plenty of money*.
2. *Multī militum vulnerātī sunt*, *many of the soldiers were wounded*.

a. Observe that each genitive denotes a whole, and the word on which it depends denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, of which a part is taken, is called a *Partitive Genitive*.

309. Rule for the Partitive Genitive. Words denoting a part may have with them a genitive of the whole from which the part is taken.

a. Numerals and a few other words have the ablative with *ē* (*ex*) or *dē* instead of the partitive genitive: as, *decem ex militibus*, *ten of the soldiers*.

310.

VOCABULARY

angustus, -a, -um, narrow (<i>anguish</i>)	litus, litoris, <i>n.</i> , shore (<i>littoral</i>)
celer, -eris, -ere, swift, quick (<i>celerity</i>)	pars, partis (<i>parti-</i>), <i>f.</i> , part (<i>partition</i>)
cōpia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , plenty, supply; plur., troops (<i>copious</i>)	quīnque, <i>adj.</i> , <i>indecl.</i> , five (<i>quinquennial</i>)

EXERCISES

✓ 311. 1. Magna pars itineris est angusta sed facillima. 2. Prīmā lūce partem hostium in monte vīdimus. 3. Illa omnium urbis viārum brevissima fuit. 4. Hominēs Britanniae hominibus Italiae dissimillimī sunt. 5. Statim decem ex militibus proeliō dēsistunt. 6. In litore fēminaē dolēbant quod iter erat difficile. 7. Omnium Gallōrum ācerrimī atque celerrimī erant hostēs. 8. Difficillima saepe facillima sunt. 9. Cum cīvitātibus proximīs amīcitiam cōfirmābunt.

✓ 312. 1. Have we plenty of arms? 2. The march through the mountains will not be easy. 3. Five of my friends will be sent by me by an easier way to the shore. 4. Part of the soldiers were cut off from the rest of the army. 5. Your hand is like mine. 6. This is the easiest of all the ways through the territories of the Gauls.

LESSON XLV

READING LESSON

313.

VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, adulēscēntis, <i>m.</i> , young man (<i>adolescent</i>)	expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvi expugnātus, take by storm
vīta, -ae, <i>f.</i> , life (<i>vital</i>)	capture
appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus, call, name (<i>appeal</i>)	iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātūrus swear, take oath (<i>abjure</i>)

SCIPIO ET HANNIBAL

314. Scipiō et Hannibal erant clārissimī imperātōrēs. Ille (*the former*) erat Rōmānus, qui victoriās magnās reportāvit hic (*the latter*) Poenus, qui Rōmānōs multis pugnīs vicit. Hannibal puer¹ ad ārās ā patre adductus est. Ibi odium iūrāvit in Rōmānōs. Adulēscēns oppida multa in Hispāniā expugnāvit, tum Alpis montis superāvit³ Rōmānōsque saepe vīcit in Italiā. Scipiō ad⁴ Ticinum flūmen vitam patris virtūte servāvit posteāque ad⁴ Cannās contrā Hannibalem sē fortē praebuit. Bellum in Āfricam trānsportātum est ibique Scipiō Hannibalem ad⁴ Zamam superāvit. Ā Rōmānīs appellātus est Āfricānus.

315.

VOCABULARY

nātūra, -ae, <i>f.</i> , nature, character (natural)	discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessūrūs, withdraw
omnīnō, <i>adv.</i> , wholly, altogether, entirely	perveniō, pervenire, pervenī, per-
prīmū, <i>adv.</i> , first, at first	ventūrus, come through, reach
acciō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus, receive (<i>accept</i>)	arrive quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quae-

¹ puer, when a boy.

² in, against.

³ superāvit, passed over.

⁴ ad, near

PERSEUS MEDUSAM QUAERIT (CONTINUED FROM 291)

316. Perseus adulēscēns ex īsulā Seriphō discessit, et, postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesīvit. Diū frūstrā eam quaerēbat, nam nātūram locī ignōrābat. Tandem Mercurius et Minerva ei viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Prīnum ad Graeās, sorōrēs Medūsae, pervēnit. Hārum auxiliō tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Mercurius et Minerva ei falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum, postquam tālāria pedibus induit,¹ in āera² ascendit. Diū per āera volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa cum reliquis Gorgonibus incolēbat. Gorgones mōnstra erant quārum capita anguibus omnīnō contēcta³ erant. Manūs autem ex aere⁴ erant factae.

¹ pedibus induit, put on his feet. ² āera, acc. of āer. ³ contēcta, from contegō. ⁴ aere, from aes.



SCIPIO AND HANNIBAL

LESSON XLVI

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES · THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

317. Adjectives Compared Irregularly. Both the comparative and the superlative of several common adjectives are irregular. Commit to memory the following:

bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
magnus, -a, -um, <i>large</i>	maior, maius, <i>larger</i>	maximus, -a, -um, <i>largest</i>
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i>
multi, -ae, -a, <i>many</i>	plūrēs, plūra, <i>more</i>	plūrimī, -ae, -a, <i>most</i>
parvus, -a, -um, <i>little</i> , <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>less</i> , <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um, <i>least</i> , <i>smallest</i>

318. The Declension of *Plūs*. In the singular *plūs, more*, is used only as a neuter noun. Learn the declension of *plūs* (648).

319. Other Adjectives Compared Irregularly. There are other adjectives that are compared irregularly, some of which have no positive, but form their comparative and superlative from prepositions or adverbs, and others of which have two forms in the superlative. See 649. These should be learned as they occur in the vocabularies.

320. The Ablative of Degree of Difference.

1. *Pater pede altior est quam filius, the father is a foot taller than his son.*
2. *Pax multō grātior erit quam bellum, peace will be much more welcome than war.*

a. Observe that the ablatives *pede* and *multō* answer the question (*by*) *how much?* They denote the *degree of difference* between the objects compared. This usage is called the *Ablative of Degree of Difference*.

321. *Rule for the Ablative of Degree of Difference.* *The degree of difference is expressed by the ablative.*

322.**VOCABULARY**

centum, *adj., indecl.*, a hundred
(century)

inferus, -a, -um, low, below (649)
(inferior)

interdum, *adv.*, sometimes

malus, -a, -um, bad (*malice*)

opera, -ae, *f.*, work, activity (*opera*)

quam, *conj.*, than

sex, *adj., indecl.*, six (*sextant*)

superus, -a, -um, high, above (649)
(superior)

EXERCISES

323. 1. In inferiōrem partem prōvinciae sex legiōnēs ā Cae-sare dūcuntur. 2. Viae urbis nostrae pedibus multīs angustiōrēs sunt. 3. Maximae manūs hostium convocātae erant et Rōmānōs itinere prohibēbant. 4. Dē locīs superiōribus plūrima tēla iēcē-runt. 5. Illa turris decēm pedibūs altior quam mūrus est. 6. Minōra castra ā centum militibūs dēfendēbantur. 7. Tua opera pars est maior quam mea. 8. Interdum amīcī nōbīs cōnsilium malum dant. 9. Summum montem¹ videō. 10. Italiae pars īferior propter multās Graecōrum urbēs Magna Graecia appellābātur; superior pars Itāliae, quod ibi Gallī incolēbant, Gallia Cisalpīna vel (*or*) Gallia Citerior appellābātur.

✓ **324.** 1. The best men sometimes do not have the most friends. 2. On the journey a great many men were killed; the rest fled into a very large forest. 3. Cornelia was a foot taller than Julia. 4. The Gauls had more horsemen than the Romans. 5. Part of the army was waiting in higher places. 6. A better plan was shown to the senate. 7. The largest towns sent a hundred hostages to Cæsar.

¹ summum montem, top of the mountain.

LESSON XLVII.

THE FORMATION AND THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

325. The Formation of Adverbs. Many adverbs are formed from adjectives. From adjectives of the first and second declensions adverbs are formed by the addition of *-ē* to the base of the positive; from adjectives of the third declension they may be formed by the addition of *-iter* to the base: as, *cārē*, *dearly*, from *cārus*, *dear*; *miserē*, *wretchedly*, from *miser*, *wretched*; *āriter*, *eagerly*, from *ācer*, *eager*; but most adjectives of one ending add *-ter* to the base: as, *audācter*, from *audāx*.

a. Form adverbs from *grātus*, *lātus*, *longus*, *liber*, *aeger*, *brevis*, *fortis*, *gravis*.

326. The Irregular Formation of Adverbs. Some adverbs are the accusative or ablative singular neuter of the adjective: as, *multum*, *much*, from *multus*; *multō*, *much*, from *multus*; *facile*, *easily*, from *facilis*.

327. The Comparison of Adverbs.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>cārē</i>	<i>cārius</i>	<i>cārissimē</i>
<i>miserē</i>	<i>miserius</i>	<i>miserrimē</i>
<i>āriter</i>	<i>ārius</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>
<i>facile</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>
<i>bene</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male</i>	<i>peius</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>multum</i>	<i>plūsus</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>

a. Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular comparative of the adjective; and that the superlative, with one exception, is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final *-us* to *-ē*.

328.

VOCABULARY

amplus, -a, -um, large, spacious
(ample)

arbor, arboris, f., tree (arboreal)

diligenter, adv., diligently (diligent)

diū (diūtius, diūtissimē), adv., long

hinc, adv., hence, from here, from
this place

liberī, -ōrum, m. plur., children
(liberty)

multitūdō, -inis, f., great number
(multitude)

subitō, adv., suddenly

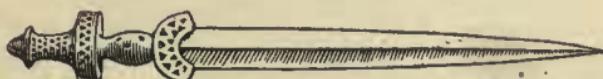
praemittō, praemittere, praemisi,
praemissus, send ahead (pre-
mise)

relinquō, relinquere, reliqui, relic-
tus, leave behind, leave (relin-
quish)

EXERCISES

329. 1. Patrēs et mātrēs suōs liberōs maximē amant. 2. Eis cōnsilia optima dant et prō eis diligentissimē labōrant. 3. Tum in illam silvam amplam, quam hinc vidēmus, multitūdinem peditum praemittēmus. 4. Ex hōc summō monte facile videō sex urbēs centumque viās. 5. In īmīs terrae partibus sunt flūmina minima. 6. Diūtius lacū quam montibus impedītae sunt cōpiae nostrae. 7. Plūrimi militēs apud portum relictī erant; reliqui impetum in hostis subitō fēcērunt. 8. Arboribus et lapidibus mūrōs facient. 9. Hoc flūmen centum pedibus lātius est quam illud.

330. 1. Sometimes Cæsar's enemies fought much more bravely than the Roman soldiers. 2. But his soldiers fought very eagerly and boldly. 3. He carried on wars with the Gauls for a very long time. 4. Often he gave ample rewards to his centurions because they had captured much booty. 5. He was killed in the city of Rome by his personal enemies (*inimicus*).



GALLIC SWORD

LESSON XLVIII.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION · THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

331. The Fifth Declension. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *-ēs*. They are feminine, with the exception of *diēs*, *day*, which is usually masculine. They are inflected as follows :

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	CASE ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i>	di'ēs	di'ēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diē'i	diē'rum	re'i	re'rum	-ēi -ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diē'i	diē'bus	re'i	re'bus	-ēi -ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	di'em	di'ēs	rem	rēs	-em -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	di'ē	diē'bus	rē	re'bus	-ē -ēbus

a. The vowel *e* of the case endings is regularly long. It is shortened, however, in the ending *-eī* after a consonant, and in the ending *-em* : as, *rēi* and *rem*.

b. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and the accusative plural. Decline *aciēs*, *fidēs* and *spēs*.

332. The Accusative of Extent.

1. *Decem annōs urbs oppugnābatur*, *the city was besieged for ten years.*
2. *Turris est centum pedēs alta*, *the tower is a hundred feet high.*

a. The accusative *decem annōs* denotes *extent of time*; the accusative *centum pedēs* denotes *extent of space*. Such accusatives answer the questions *how long?* *how far?* in time or in space. This usage is called the *Accusative of Extent*.

333. Rule for the Accusative of Extent. *Extent of time or of space is expressed by the accusative.*

334.

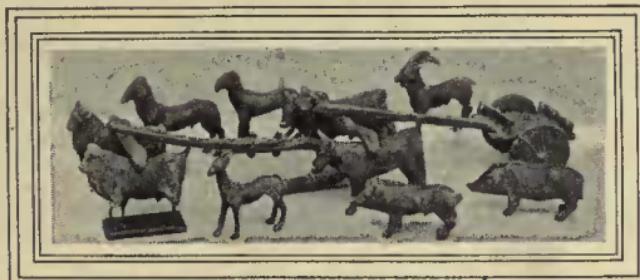
VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēi, f., line of battle	rēs, -eī, f., thing, event, fact (<i>reality</i>)
altus, -a, -um, high, deep (<i>alto</i>)	
diēs, -ēi, m., day (<i>diary</i>)	spēs, -eī, f., hope
fidēs, -eī, f., trust, confidence	instruō, instruere, instrūxi, instrūctus, draw up, marshal (<i>instruct</i>)
plānitiēs, -ēi, f., plain (<i>plane</i>)	
posterus, -a, -um, next (649)	castra pōnere, to pitch camp

EXERCISES

335. 1. Caesar castra summō in monte prīmum posuit.
 2. Castra summō in monte ā Caesare posita sunt. 3. Hinc hostēs magnā in plānitiē vīsi sunt. 4. Inter hunc montem et illam plānitiem erat flūmen, quod centum pedēs lātum et quīnque pedēs altum erat. 5. Caesar autem aciem instrūxit et impetum hostium exspectābat. 6. Eius equitēs maiōrem partem diēi in cornibus manēbant. 7. Sed hostēs impetum nōn fēcērunt, quod parvam victōriæ spem habuērunt. 8. Tum adulēscēntēs frūmentō plūris diēs caruērunt. 9. Collēs post castra nostra multis pedibus altiōrēs sunt.

336. 1. Cæsar heard about this fact from very many messengers. 2. The confidence of the Gauls was very slight on that day. 3. The river was ten feet deep at this place ; and so they left all the baggage on the shore. 4. This fact deprived our soldiers of all hope. 5. We shall remain six days in Italy.



AN OFFERING TO THE GODS

LESSON. XLIX

READING LESSON

A LETTER FROM POMPEII

337. Si tū valēs, bene est; ego quoque valeō. Hās litterās ad tē laetus¹ scribō. Medici cōnsiliō cum parentibus in Italia hiemāvī. Apud² vōs nivēs (*snow*) omnia complent, sed nōs hīc nivēs rārō vidēmus. Āēr est lēnissimus; caelum rīdet. Interdum in lītore ambulō vel in hortis amplis errō, nam grāmen arborēsque iam virent. Hinc videō Vesuvium montem hinc tōtam ferē urbem, hinc pulchrās īsulās in marī sitās. Linguae Lātīnae cotidiē multum operae dō. Eam linguan multō facilius quam Graecam discō. Sed iam finem faciam epistulae; mox cōram omnia tibi nārrābō. Valē,⁴ mī amīce.⁵

¹ *laetus*, *gladly*. ² *apud*, *with*. ³ *sitās*, *situated*. ⁴ *valē*, *farewell*. This form is the imperative singular of *valeō*. See *xxxii, a.* ⁵ *mī amīce*, *my friend*. These words are in the vocative case (*xxiv, b.*). When a person is addressed in Latin, a special case, called the vocative, is used. Generally it is the same in spelling as the nominative.



A VIEW IN POMPEII

338.

VOCABULARY

cōspectus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , look, view, sight (<i>conspectus</i>)	prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessi, prō- cessūrus, go forward, advance (<i>proceed</i>)
modus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , way, manner (<i>mood</i>)	
saxum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , stone, rock	vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, turn, change (<i>convert</i>)
excēdō, excēdere, excessi, excessū- rus, go out, withdraw	

PERSEUS MEDUSAM INTERFICIT (CONTINUED FROM 316)

339. Rēs difficillima erat caput Gorgonis abscidere,¹ eius enim cōspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva speculum Perseō dederat. Ille igitur tergum vertit, et in speculum īspiciēbat; hōc modō ad locum prōcessit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput eius ūnō ictū abscidit. Reliquae Gorgones statim ē somnō excitātae sunt, et, ubi² rem vidērunt, perturbātae sunt. Arma rapuērunt, et Perseum interficere volēbant.³ Ille autem dum fugit,⁴ galeam magi-
cam induit; et, ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōspectū eārum excessit.

¹ abscidere, to cut off. The infinitive is here used as the subject of erat (393). ² What two meanings has ubi in this paragraph? What kind of clause does it introduce here? ³ interficere volēbant, wished to kill. ⁴ dum fugit, while he was fleeing. The present tense with dum is translated as if it were the imperfect tense.



HEAD OF MEDUSA

CATUT M^{ED}USA^E

LESSON L

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD · THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PURPOSE CLAUSES WITH *UT* AND *NE*

340. The Subjunctive Mood. The Latin subjunctive is used in both independent and dependent clauses, but the kinds of dependent clauses in which the subjunctive is used are far more numerous than the independent. In this book only some uses in dependent clauses will be studied.

341. The Tenses of the Subjunctive. There are four tenses of the subjunctive: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. No meanings are given for the tenses of the subjunctive, because the translation varies with the use of the mood (cf. 343, 357, 372).

342. The Present Subjunctive. The present subjunctive of the several conjugations and of **sum** is inflected as follows:

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
1. a'mem	amē'mus	a'mer	amē'mur
2. a'mēs	amē'tis	amē'ris	amē'mini
3. a'met	a'ment	amē'tur	amēn'tur
mone			
reg	-am, -ās, -at	-āmus, -ātis, -ant	ACTIV
capi	-ar, -āris, -ātūr	-āmūr, -āmīni, -āntūr	PASSI
audi			
sim, sīs, sit		sīmus, sītis, sint	

a. Observe that the mood sign of the present subjunctive of the regular verbs is **-ē-** in the first conjugation, and **-ā-** in the others.

b. Learn the present subjunctive of the verbs above. Then inflect the present subjunctive active and passive of **dūcō**, **mittō**, **recipiō**, **reperiō**, and **videō**. The present subjunctive belongs in the present system (671).

343. Purpose Clauses.

1. **Civēs sē armant ut pugnant,** *the citizens arm themselves that they may fight (or, in order that they may fight, in order to fight, for the purpose of fighting, to fight).*
2. **Civēs sē armant nē superentur,** *the citizens arm themselves that they may not be overcome (or, in order not to be overcome, so that they may not be overcome, lest they be overcome).*

a. Observe that the dependent clauses express the *purpose* of the action of the principal clause, *ut, that*, introducing the affirmative clause, and *nē, that not*, the negative clause.

b. Observe the various ways of translating *ut* and *nē* and the subjunctive in these clauses. In English, purpose is most often expressed by the infinitive. In the best Latin prose, however, the purpose of an action is not expressed by the infinitive.

344. Rule for Purpose Clauses. *The subjunctive is used with *ut* or *nē* in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action stated in the independent clause.*

EXERCISES

- 345.** 1. Nūntium mittit *ut cīvēs moneat.* 2. Adulēscēns mititur *ut cīvēs moneantur.* 3. Legiō mittitur *nē oppidum ab hostibus capiātur.* 4. Legiōnēs fortiter pugnant *ut oppidum capiant.* 5. Puer venit *ut fābulam audiat.* 6. Puerī veniunt *ut verba tua audiant.* 7. Eōs mittimus *ut prōvinciam regant.* 8. Eōs mittimus *ut prōvincia ab eīs regātur.* 9. In Galliam properātis *ut bellum gerātis.* 10. Centum militēs praemittimus *ut castra mūniant.*

- 346.** 1. He is sent to fight. 2. We send them to find the way. 3. You are sent that the enemy may not make an attack on the city. 4. The soldiers are led out of the camp that a line of battle may be drawn up. 5. I am coming to see you and your mother. 6. He fights to defend himself.

LESSON LI

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE · SEQUENCE OF TENSES

347. The Imperfect Subjunctive. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive active; but the final -e of the infinitive is lengthened in certain forms.

a. Learn the imperfect subjunctive of the model verbs and of **sum** (658-663). The imperfect subjunctive belongs in the present system (671).

348. Sequence of Tenses. Examine the following English sentences:

1. He *comes* (*is coming*) that he *may* fight.
2. He *will come* that he *may* fight.
3. He *came* that he *might* fight.

a. Observe that in sentences 1 and 2 the verbs in the independent clauses are present and future, and that in sentence 3 the verb in the independent clause is past. Observe the change from *may* (present) to *might* (past) when a past tense takes the place of a present or a future in the verb of the independent clause. This following of one tense by another of the same kind is called *Sequence of Tenses*.

349. Primary and Secondary Tenses. Those tenses of the indicative which refer to present or to future time (present, future, and future perfect) are called *Primary Tenses*. Those tenses of the indicative which refer to past time (imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect) are called *Secondary Tenses*.

350. Rule for Primary Sequence. When the verb of the independent clause of a sentence is in a primary tense, a verb in the dependent clause is in the present tense if its action is incomplete, but in the perfect tense if its action is completed.

351. Rule for Secondary Sequence. When the verb of the independent clause of a sentence is in a secondary tense, a verb in the dependent clause is in the imperfect tense if its action is incomplete, but in the pluperfect if its action is completed.

a. Observe that all the verbs in the independent clauses in 345 are in the present tense, and that all the verbs in the dependent clauses are in the present subjunctive. If the verbs in the independent clauses should be changed to the future or the future perfect tense, what would be the tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clauses?

352. Rule for the Tense of the Subjunctive in Purpose Clauses. Since a purpose clause expresses an incomplete action, its verb will be in the present subjunctive if the verb in the independent clause is in a primary tense, and in the imperfect subjunctive if the verb of the independent clause is in a secondary tense.

EXERCISES

353. 1. Veniunt ut pācem petant. 2. Veniēbant ut pācem peterent. 3. Venient ut pācem petant. 4. Vēnerant ut pācem peterent. 5. Fortiter pugnābant nē ā Gallis vincerentur. 6. Trāns flūmen properāverant ut oppidum oppugnārent. 7. Legiōnēs mīttentur ut hostēs commeātibus interclūdantur. 8. Ut portum dēfēderent nostri praemissi sunt. 9. Cōsul audācissimē dīcet ut populum Rōmānum incitet.

354. 1. They labor that they may be praised. 2. They were laboring that they might be praised. 3. They will labor that they may be praised. 4. They had labored that they might be praised. 5. They threw weapons from the higher places in order to hinder the Romans. 6. He had called together the chiefs to hear the new plan. 7. They will desist from battle that they may not be killed.

LESSON LII

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE · RESULT CLAUSES

355. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. A substantive clause is a clause used like a noun (xx, *d*) ; it may be the subject or the object of a verb. Purpose clauses with *ut* and *nē* are often used in Latin as the objects of certain verbs : as,

Petit ut obsidēs dent, he asks them to give hostages (that they give hostages).

a. Observe that the clause *ut obsidēs dent* is the object of *petit*. This is, therefore, a noun clause. The purpose clauses in the preceding lessons were adverbial in nature (xx, *c*).

356. Rule for Substantive Clauses of Purpose. *Verbs meaning ask, command, persuade, and urge may have for their object a clause of purpose with its verb in the subjunctive.*

a. In English an infinitive is generally used in the object clause.

357. Result Clauses.

1. Iter tam longum est ut puer sit dēfessus, the journey is so long that the boy is tired out.

2. Puer tam malus fuit ut ā patre nōn laudārētur, the boy was so bad that he was not praised by his father.

a. Observe that the dependent clauses beginning with *ut* express the result of the statements in the independent clauses, and that the subjunctive is translated by an English indicative.

b. Observe that the sequence is the same as in purpose clauses, but that the negative clause contains *ut nōn* (not *nē*).

358. Rule for Result Clauses. *The subjunctive is used with *ut* or *ut nōn* in a dependent clause to express the result of the action stated in the independent clause. The sequence of tenses is generally the same as in purpose clauses.*

359.

VOCABULARY

ita, <i>adv.</i> , so, in such a way	circumveniō, circumvenire, circum-
tam, <i>adv.</i> , so	vēnī, circumventus, surround
tantus, -a, -um, so great	(circumvent).
agō, agere, ēgī, actus, act, do (agent)	imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, impe- rātus, command, order (imper- ative)

EXERCISES

360. ① Puer ita ēgit ut ab omnibus amārētur. 2. Urbs vās-tāta est nē ab hostibus caperētur. 3. Eum monēmus nē miles sit. 4. Imperāvit nē per nostram prōvinciam iter facerent. ⑤ Tanta est inopia cibī ut plūrimi aegrī sint. ⑥ Urbs tam fortiter dēfēnsa est ut decem diēbus nōn caperētur. 7. Hostēs in silvās fūgērunt nē ā nostrīs circumvenirentur. 8. Caesar pīmum postulāvit ut nostrīs auxilium darētur..

361. ① They were so few that they fled. ② They were so brave that they did not flee. 3. I advise him to be more bold. 4. The lieutenant led the soldiers out of the camp in order to draw up a line of battle. 5. He demands that they pitch camp in this place. ⑥ The marsh is so great that our men are hindered.



A ROMAN CUP

SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS XLIV-LII

362. Give the English meanings of the following words :

accipio	copia	instruo	opera	res
aciēs	diēs	interdūm	par	saxum
adulēscēns	difficilis	ita	perveniō	sex
agō	diligenter	iūrō	plānitiēs	similis
altus	discēdō	liberī	posterus	spēs
amplus	dissimilis	lītus	praemittō	subitō
angustus	excēdō	malus	prīnum	superus
appellō	expugnō	modus	prōcēdō	tam
arbor	facilis	multitūdō	quaerō	tantus
celer	fidēs	nātūra	quam	ut
centum	hinc	nē	quīnque	vertō
circumveniō	imperō	omnīnō	relinquō	vīta
cōspectus	īferus			

363. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

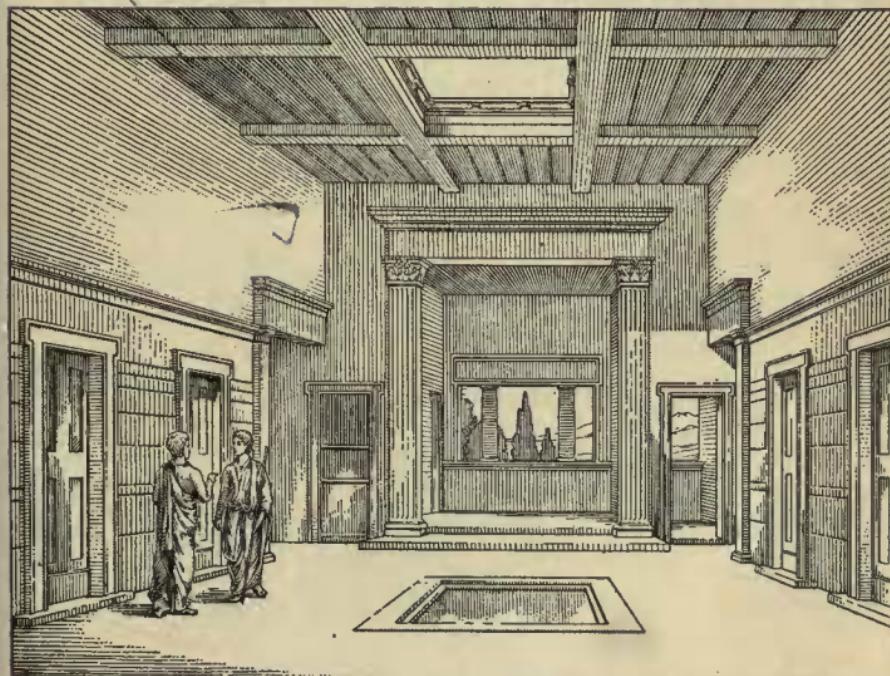
children	hundred	high, deep	swear, take oath
bad	so	turn, change	so, in such a way
hope	next	young man	nature, character
five	plain	that not, lest	thing, event, fact
suddenly	narrow	way, manner	leave behind, leave
so great	day	send ahead	look, view, sight
part	withdraw	command, order	plenty, supply; troops
easy	hard	stone, rock	trust, confidence
than	six	wholly, entirely	draw up, marshal
unlike	seek, ask	great number	take by storm, capture
tree	act, do	so that, to	go forward, advance
sometimes	high, above	large, spacious	hence, from here
diligently	call, name	first, at first	come through, reach
shore	like	work, activity	arrive
receive	low, below	line of battle	go out, withdraw
life	surround	swift, quick	

364. Decline each noun and each adjective in 362. Conjugate each verb in the present and the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural.

365. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 362. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

366. Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Partitive genitive | 4. Adverbial clause of purpose |
| 2. Ablative of degree of difference | 5. Substantive clause of purpose |
| 3. Accusative of extent | 6. Adverbial clause of result |
| | 7. Sequence of tenses |



THE ATRIUM OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON LIII

READING LESSON

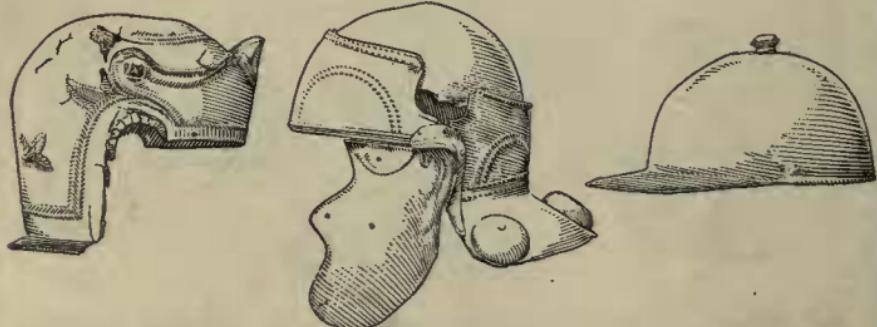
367.

VOCABULARY

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, give way, retire (<i>secede</i>)	ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxi, ēductus, lead out, lead forth
conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus, place, station (<i>collocation</i>)	iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid (<i>adjutant</i>)

CAESAR HOSTIS VINCIT

368. Posterō diē Caesar ex castrīs exercitum ēdūxit et iter ad flūmen fēcit. Quae (*this*) rēs hostibus nūntiāta est, quōrum peditēs ā nostrīs summō in colle visi sunt. Tum Caesar equitēs in cornibus conlocāvit ut peditēs iuvārent, et militum animōs ad pugnam ita incitāvit: "Omnis reī pūblicae spēs in nostrā virtūte posita est. Audācēs fortūna iuvat.. Fortēs vincent." Hostēs tam āriter in nostram aciem impetum fēcērunt ut hī cēderent. Brevi autem tempore hostēs ita superāti sunt ut ex omnibus pugnae partibus trāns flūmen fugerent. Eōrum dux captus est et Rōmam missus est.



ROMAN HELMETS

369.

VOCABULARY

cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī,	sultus, plan, deliberate, consult (consultation)
cōnstitūtus, establish, deter- mine (<i>constitution</i>)	trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus, give over, surrender (<i>tradition</i>)
cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsului, cōn-	

ANDROMEDA FILIA CEPHEI (CONTINUED FROM 339)

370. Post haec Perseus in finēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus illō tempore regēbat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum, oīlim offenderat; itaque Neptūnus mōnstrum saevissimum mīserat. Hoc mōnstrum cotidiē ē mari veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. Quam (*this*) ob causam terror animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Hammōnis cōnsuluit, et ā deō iussus est¹ filiam Andromedam mōnstrō trādere.² Illa autem virgō pulcherrimā erat. Cēpheus, ubi haec audīvit, maximē doluit. Volēbat tamen cīvīs suōs ē tantō perīculō servāre,³ et ob eam causam imperāta Hammōnis facere⁴ cōnstituit.

¹ iussus est, from iubeō. ² trādere, translate with iussus est. ³ servāre, translate with volēbat (394). ⁴ facere, translate with cōnstituit (394).



A ROMAN CHARIOT

LESSON LIV

THE PERFECT AND THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE INDIRECT QUESTIONS

371. The Perfect and the Pluperfect Subjunctive. The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive active are formed on the perfect stem (671) :

amāv	-erim, -eris, -erit,	-erimus, -eritis, -erint
amāv	-issem, -issēs, -isset,	-issēmus, -issētis, -issent

The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive passive belong to the participial system (671).

a. Learn these tenses of the model verbs and of **sum** (658–663). Inflect the entire subjunctive of **agō**, **pōnō**, **dō**, and **videō**.

372. Indirect Questions. An indirect question is a subordinate clause which contains the substance of a direct question : as,

1. **Ubi sunt?** *where are they?*
2. **Audit ubi sint,** *he hears where they are.*

a. Observe that the dependent clause in 2 begins with an interrogative word (**ubi**) and contains the substance of the direct question in 1. Observe that the subjunctive mood is used, and that the clause is substantive in nature. Every subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word is an indirect question.

b. An indirect question, with its verb in the subjunctive, may be used as the subject or the object of another verb. Indirect questions usually follow the general rule for the sequence of tenses : as,

1. **Audit,** *he hears*
 2. **Audiet,** *he will hear*
 3. **Audiverit,** *he will have heard*
- ubi sint, where they are*

ubi fuerint, where they were or where they have been

}

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Audiēbat, he was hearing
2. Audivit, he heard
3. Audiverat, he had heard | ubi essent, where they were
ubi fuissent, where they had been |
|---|--|

373. Rule for Indirect Questions. The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. If the verb of the independent clause is in a primary tense, the verb of the indirect question is put in the present subjunctive for an incomplete action, but in the perfect for a completed action. If the verb of the independent clause is in a secondary tense, the verb of the indirect question is put in the imperfect subjunctive for an incomplete action, but in the pluperfect for a completed action.

374.**VOCABULARY**

num, <i>adv.</i> , whether	rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus, ask
quot, <i>adv.</i> , how many (<i>quotient</i>)	(arrogant)
unde, <i>adv.</i> , whence	sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know (science)

EXERCISES

375. 1. Rogat quid agant, quid ēgerint. 2. Sciēbat quid age-
rent, quid ēgissent. 3. Tibi dicam cūr labōrent, cūr labōrāverint.
4. Audiverant unde militēs venirent, unde vēnissent. 5. Rogā-
vērunt cūr laudārētur, cūr laudātī essent. 6. Scit cūr mane-
ant, cūr mānserint. 7. Nōbis dixit quid illī puerī fēcissent.
8. Rogāvī num saepe in Italiā fuisset. 9. Scīsne quot annōs
Rōmānī Britanniam tenuerint?

376. 1. I shall tell you where they were and what they did.
2. These come to see, those to be seen. 3. They are so tired
that they are not working to-day. 4. He asked me why I had
come. 5. I had heard where he had been. 6. The general
asked whether they had all come. 7. Do you know how many
soldiers are coming?

LESSON LV

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES · THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

377. Numeral Adjectives. For the definition of numeral adjectives see III, c. A list of Latin cardinal and ordinal numerals is given in 651.

378. The Declension of Numeral Adjectives. The cardinals *ūnus*, *one*, *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, are declined; so, too, are the words for the *hundreds*, as, *ducentī*, *two hundred*, *trecentī*, *three hundred*, and (in the plural) *mille*, *thousand*. The other cardinals are not declined. The ordinals are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions.

a. Learn the declension of *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and *mille* (646).

379. The Use of *Mille*. The singular of *mille* is indeclinable, and is used either as an adjective or as a neuter noun: *mille* (adj.) *hominēs*, *a thousand men*, or *mille* (noun) *hominum*. The plural is used only as a noun. When used as a noun it takes the partitive genitive: (*mille hominum*) *a thousand (of) men* *quattuor mīlia hominum*, *four thousand(s of) men*.

380. The Objective Genitive.

Spēs praedae hominēs incitat, hope of booty impels the men.

a. Observe that the genitive *praedae* expresses the thing hoped for the object of the hope. This usage of the genitive case is called the *Objective Genitive*. The difference between the possessive and the objective genitive is illustrated by *timor canis*, *fear of the dog*, which may mean the dog's fear (possessive) or fear felt for the dog (objective).

381. Rule for the Objective Genitive. *Some nouns of action and feeling may have with them a genitive to express the object of the action or feeling implied in the nouns.*

382.

VOCABULARY

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right (<i>dexterous</i>)	passus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , pace (<i>pace</i>)
duo, duae, duo, <i>adj.</i> , two (<i>dual</i>)	quārtus, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , fourth (<i>quarto</i>)
memoria, -ae, <i>f.</i> , memory (<i>memorable</i>)	quattuor, <i>adj.</i> , <i>indecl.</i> , four
mille, <i>adj.</i> or <i>noun</i> , thousand (<i>million</i>)	sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left (<i>sinister</i>)
mille passuum, mile (a thousand of paces)	tertius, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , third (<i>tertiary</i>)
octō, <i>adj.</i> , <i>indecl.</i> , eight (<i>October</i>)	timor, timōris, <i>m.</i> , fear (<i>timorous</i>)
	trēs, tria, <i>adj.</i> , three (<i>trio</i>)
	ūnus, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , one (<i>unify</i>)

EXERCISES

383. 1. In itinere duo flūmiña reperientur decem pedēs alta.
 2. Memoria hārum rērum exercitum incitāverat. 3. Tria mīlia
 passuum iter fēcerant et prīma aciēs īstruēbātur. 4. Caesar
 imperāvit ut in dextrō cornū tertia, in sinistrō quārta legiō con-
 locārētur. 5. Trium frātrum Mārcus erat fortissimus. 6. Propter
 studium victōriæ haec ūna legiō Gallōs sustinuit. 7. Pilum
 Rōmānum fuit sex pedēs longum. 8. Posterō diē octō mīlia
 passuum ex illō lōcō discessērunt. 9. Quattuor explōrātōrēs,
 quī praemissī erant, propter timōrem hostium fūgērunt.

384. 1. Hope of a reward impelled the children of Marcus.
 2. On that hill were drawn up ten thousand foot soldiers and
 two thousand horsemen. 3. The baggage of the army had
 been left a mile from the shore. 4. The general will station
 the second legion in front of the camp. 5. At the arrival of
 two legions the enemy departed from the left flank. 6. Fear
 of Cæsar and of the Romans will hinder one clan. 7. One of
 the men was unfriendly to me.

LESSON LVI

ADJECTIVES HAVING THE GENITIVE IN *-IUS*

385. Adjectives having the Genitive in *-ius*. The adjectives of the following vocabulary end in *-ius* in the genitive singular and in *-i* in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of *alter* ends in *-ius*).

386.

VOCABULARY

alius, alia, aliud, other, another (alias)	sōlus, -a, -um, alone, sole, only (solitude)
alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two) (alterhate).	tōtus, -a, -um, whole, all (total)
neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither (of two) (neutralitv)	ūllus, -a, -um, any (at all)
nūllus, -a, -um, no, no one, none (nullify)	ūnus, -a, -um, one (unite)
	uter, utra, utrum, which (of two)
	uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both

- Learn the declension of *alius* (646). Decline the other words.
- These adjectives are usually emphatic, and so stand before their nouns. They are often used as pronouns.

387. The Idiomatic Uses of *Alius* and of *Alter*. *Alius* and *alter*, when repeated in the same sentence, have the following meanings:

alter . . . alter, one . . . the other (of two only)
alius . . . aliis, one . . . another (of any number)
aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others

- Alterum oppidum in Italiā, alterum in Galliā est, one town is in Italy, the other in Gaul (only two towns are thought of).
- Aliud oppidum magnum, aliud parvum est, one town is large another small (here the thought is not limited to two towns).
- Aliī gladiis, aliī pilis pugnant, some are fighting with swords others with javelins.

EXERCISES

- 388.** 1. In alterō flūminis lītore urbs, in alterō fuit mōns.
 2. Duōrum hominū alter imperātor, alter tribūnus erat. 3. Tertiae legiōnis sōlius virtūte tōtus exercitus dēfendēbātur. 4. Altera legiō in dextrō, altera in sinistrō cornū ā Caesare conlocāta est.
 5. Neutrī obsidi cibum dabō. 6. Uter puer est tuus filius? 7. Eā aestāte erant in marī nūllae nāvēs. 8. Cūr utrumque incitās?

- 389.** 1. Cæsar had praised the valor of the whole legion.
 2. Which of the two young men showed the greater courage?
 3. Cæsar will march without any delay with the second legion alone. 4. Some were pitching camp, others were drawing up a line of battle. 5. In no place did we find very many trees.

390.

VOCABULARY

celeritās, celeritātis, <i>f.</i> , speed (celerity)	lacrima, -ae, <i>f.</i> , tear (<i>lachrymose</i>)
dolor, dolōris, <i>m.</i> , grief, pain (dolorous)	nec, neque, <i>conj.</i> , and not, nor
fremitus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , noise	simul, <i>adv.</i> , at the same time (<i>simultaneous</i>)

MONSTRUM APPROPINQUAT (CONTINUED FROM 370)

- 391.** Tum rēx diem dixit et omnia parāvit. Ubi is diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad lītus ducta est, et in cōspectū omnium ad rūpem adligāta est. Omnēs propter fātum eius dolēbant, nec lacrimās tenēbant. Subitō autem, dum mōnstrum exspectant, Perseus ad lītus pervenit; et, ubi lacrimās vīdit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illī rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis auditur; simul mōnstrum saevissimum procul vidētur. Eius cōspectus timōrem maximum prae- buit. Magnā celeritāte ad lītus mōnstrum properāvit, iamque ad locum appropinquābat ubi puella stābat.

LESSON LVII

THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND AS COMPLEMENT

392. The Infinitive. The infinitives of *amō* are as follows

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i> amāre, <i>to love</i>	amāri, <i>to be loved</i>
<i>Perf.</i> amāvisse, <i>to have loved</i>	amātus esse, <i>to have been loved</i>
<i>Fut.</i> amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love, to be going to love</i>	(amātum irī, <i>to be about to be loved</i>)

a. Observe that the present infinitive passive is formed from the active by changing final *-e* to *-i*. But in the third conjugation final *-ere* is changed to *-i*.

b. The perfect infinitive active is formed by adding *-isse* to the perfect stem.

c. The perfect infinitive passive is formed by using the perfect participle with *esse*, the present infinitive of *sum*.

d. The future infinitive active is formed by using the future active participle, *amātūrus*, with *esse*. The future active participle is made by changing final *-tus* or *-sus* of the perfect passive participle *-tūrus* or *-sūrus*. Form the future active participles of *pōnō*, *instruvideō*, *mittō*, and *gerō*.

e. Learn the infinitives and meanings of the model verbs and *sum* (658–663). The future infinitive passive may be omitted. It is rare.

393. The Infinitive as Subject. Since the infinitive is a noun it may be used as the subject or the object of a verb. Since it is a *verbal* noun, it may have a subject or an object of its own and be modified by adverbs, adverb phrases, or adverb clauses.

1. *Laudāri est grātum, to be praised is pleasing.*
2. *Iter per finēs hostium facere erit difficile, to march through the territory of the enemy will be difficult.*

a. Observe that **laudāri** is the subject of **est**, and **iter per fīnēs hostium facere** of **erit**, while **iter** is the object of **facere**. Of what gender are **grātum** and **difficile**? What, then, is the gender of the infinitive?

394. The Complementary Infinitive.

1. **Vincere potest, he is able to conquer.**
2. **Bonī esse dēbēmus, we ought to be good.**

a. Observe that **vincere** and **esse** complete the meaning of **potest** and **dēbēmus**. An infinitive so used is called a *Complementary Infinitive*, and it is common in Latin, as in English, with verbs meaning *be able, decide, ought, wish, begin, etc.* You have already met this usage of the infinitive in several of the selections for reading.

b. The predicate adjective used with a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb.

395.

VOCABULARY

coepī, coepisse (<i>lacks the present system</i>), began	decimus, -a, -um , tenth (<i>decimate</i>)
dēbēre , <i>dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitus</i> , ought, be obliged to (<i>debit</i>)	potest , is able, can
	possunt , are able, can (<i>possible</i>)

EXERCISES

396. 1. **Venire, dare, discēdere potest.** 2. **Impedīri, pōnī, conlocāri possunt.** 3. **Praemia recipere saepe est grātum.** 4. **Caesar reliquōs agrōs et oppida illius cīvitātis vāstārē coepit.** 5. **Tua verba audire est difficillimum.** 6. **Germānī Rōmānōs commeātibus interclūdere nōn possunt.** 7. **Statim multitūdō pacem petere coepit.** 8. **Sē dēfendere dēbent.** 9. **Quis tōtius exercitūs tam fortis fuit ut impetum hostium sustinēret?** 10. **Hieme diēs quīnque hōrīs breviōrēs quam aestātē sunt.**

397. 1. It will be easy to fortify the camp with a high wall. 2. You ought to offer help. 3. He is not able to arouse the soldiers of the tenth legion. 4. To carry on a war is not often best. 5. We ought to be brave and good. 6. Some have begun to fight, others to flee.

LESSON LVIII

THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT · THE ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE · INDIRECT STATEMENTS

398. The Infinitive as Object.

Mē venire iussit, he ordered me to come.

a. Observe that in the English sentence the object of *ordered* is *me to come*; and that *me* is in the objective case and subject of the infinitive *to come*. The Latin sentence is like the English; *mē* is in the accusative case. Verbs meaning *order* and *wish* are the commonest verbs having an infinitive as their object; but *imperō*, *order*, takes a substantive clause of purpose (356). The objective infinitive is also used in indirect statements (400–402).

399. Rule for the Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.

400. Indirect Statements. A direct statement gives the exact words used by a speaker or writer: as, *He says (or said) "Soldiers are coming."* In an indirect statement the words of a speaker or writer are made to depend on a verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., and in English may or may not be the same as they were in the original statement or thought: as, *He says that soldiers are coming, he said that soldiers were coming*. Observe the same sentences in Latin:

1. *Militēs veniunt, soldiers are coming.*
2. *Dicit militēs venire, he says that soldiers are coming.*
3. *Dixit militēs venire, he said that soldiers were coming.*

a. Observe that in turning a direct statement into an indirect statement in Latin the nominative is changed to the accusative (399) and the indicative to the infinitive.

401. Rule for Indirect Statements. *Indirect statements, with verb in the infinitive and subject in the accusative, are found in dependence on verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like.*

402. The Use of the Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Statements. The *present* infinitive is used when the action of the indirect statement is going on at the *same* time as the action indicated by the verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*: as,

1. **Dicit militēs venīre**, *he says that soldiers are coming.*
2. **Dixit militēs venīre**, *he said that soldiers were coming.*
3. **Dicet militēs venīre**, *he will say that soldiers are coming.*

The *perfect* infinitive is used when the action of the indirect statement occurred *before* that of the verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*: as,

1. **Dicit militēs vēnisse**, *he says that soldiers came (or have come).*
2. **Dixit militēs vēnisse**, *he said that soldiers came (or had come).*
3. **Dicet militēs vēnisse**, *he will say that soldiers came (or have come).*

The *future* infinitive is used when the action of the indirect statement occurs *after* that of the verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*: as,

1. **Dicit militēs ventūrōs esse**, *he says that soldiers will come.*
2. **Dixit militēs ventūrōs esse**, *he said that soldiers would come.*
3. **Dicet militēs ventūrōs esse**, *he will say that soldiers will come.*

403.

VOCABULARY

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn, know, understand (*recognize*)
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī (*cupiī*), cupitus, desire, wish (*cupidity*)

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, bid, order, command (*jussive*)
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, answer, reply (*respond*)

EXERCISES

404. 1. Caesar per duōs explōrātōrēs cognōvit hostēs sex milia passuum iter fēcisse. 2. Socī respondent sē sine morā auxilium ad Caesarem missūrōs esse. 3. Imperātor dixit sē suis praemia ampla datūrum esse. 4. Omnēs cupiunt esse liberī. 5. Omnēs cupiunt Italiam esse liberam. 6. Omnēs vident oppidum fortiter dēfendī. 7. Statim tertiam aciem īstruī Caesar iussit. 8. Sciēbat Gallōs venire ut impetum facerent.

405. 1. That lieutenant will order his men to build towers. 2. I know that two legions have been sent ahead. 3. From the captives he learned that the enemy lacked food. 4. He ordered (*iubeō*) them to spend the winter in that state. 5. The traders replied that there was no grain in the territory of the Germans.



A ROMAN AND HIS WIFE

LESSON LIX

READING LESSON

CAESAR IN CONCILIO DICIT

406. Post hoc proelium Caesar militibus in concilio ita dixit: Eōs fortiter pugnāvisse; itaque hostis omnibus in partibus victōs esse et in montīs et palūdēs fugere; praedam eīs sē datūrum esse; sē scīre eōs longō bellō esse dēfessōs et statim eōs in Italiā missūrum esse; sē velle¹ in Galliā manēre per hiemem, sed proximā aestāte suōs in Germānōs ductūrum esse; multōs captivōs Rōmam missōs esse, et populum Rōmānum victoriā eōrum dēlectārī.

407.

VOCABULARY

paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost (*peninsula*)

regiō, regiōnis, *f.*, place (*region*)

undique, *adv.*, from all sides, everywhere

dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, put down, lay aside (*deposit*)

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, osten-

tus, show, display (*ostensible*)

reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus, give back, return (*render*)

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, know, perceive (*sentiment*)

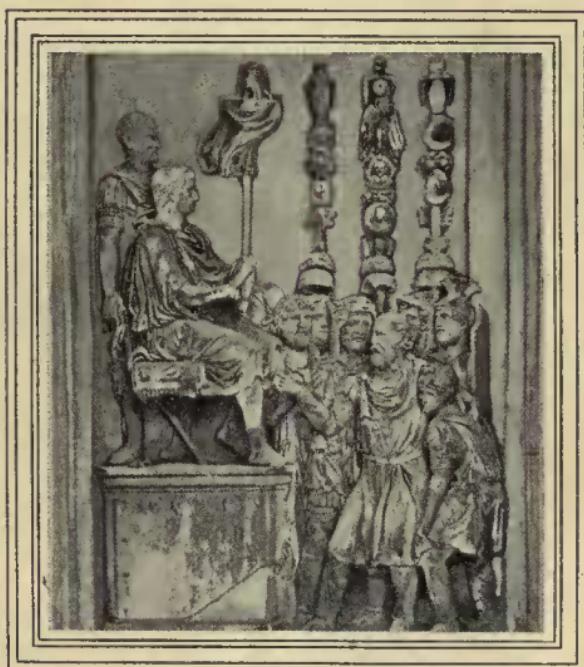
PERSEUS CEPHEO ANDROMEDAM REDDIT (CONTINUED FROM 391)

408. At Perseus ubi haec vidit, gladium suum ēdūxit, et postquam tālāria induit, per āera volāvit. Tum dēsuper in mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit, et gladiō suō collum eius graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdidit et sine morā tōtum corpus in aquam mersit. Perseus dum circum lītus volat, redditum eius exspectābat. Mare

¹ velle, infin. of volō, *wish*.

autem interim undique sanguine īficitur. Post breve tempus bēlua rūrsus caput ostendit; mox tamen ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē in undās mersit, neque posteā visa est.

Perseus postquam ad litus dēscendit, prīmum tālāria exuit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vīcta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, et ubi Perseus pervēnit, terrōre paene exanimāta erat. Ille vincula statim solvit, et puellam patri reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō adfectus est. Itaque Andromedam Perseō in mātrimōnium dedit. Paucōs annōs Perseus cum uxōre in eā regiōne habitābat, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnīs Aethiopēs.



IMPERATOR ET CAPTIVI

LESSON LX

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *IDEM*, *IPSE*, *ISTE* · THE IRREGULAR VERB *POSSUM*

409. The Demonstratives *Idem*, *Ipse*, and *Iste*. Review the declension of *is*, *hic*, and *ille* (654), and learn the declension of *idem*, *same*, *ipse*, *-self*, and *iste*, *this of yours, that of yours* (654).

a. Observe that *idem* is declined like *is* with *-dem* added, except that in the accusative singular and the genitive plural *m* is changed to *n*, and in the nominative and accusative singular *is* is changed to *i*, *id* to *i*.

b. Decline together *idem diēs, rēs ipsa*, and *istud cōnsilium*.

410. The Distinction between *Idem*, *Ipse*, and *Iste*.

a. *Idem* and *iste* may be used both as demonstrative adjectives and as demonstrative pronouns.

b. *Iste* is used of that which has some relation to the second person, and is translated *this of yours, that of yours, your*: as, *istam diligentiam laudō, I praise that diligence of yours (your diligence)*.

c. *Ipse* means *-self (himself, herself, itself, themselves)*. It is an intensive word, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees as an adjective: as, *amicus ipse ad mē vēnit, my friend himself came to me*. It must be distinguished from *sē, -self*, which is reflexive, not emphatic (266). Sometimes *ipse* may be translated *even* or *very*: as, *in flūmine ipsō pugnant, they are fighting in the very river*.

411. The Irregular Verb *Possum*. The irregular verb *possum*, *I can*, is a compound of *potis*, *able*, and *sum*, *I am*; *pot-sum* changed to *possum*. Wherever, in the inflection of this verb, *t* comes before *s*, it is changed to *s*, and wherever it comes before *f*, *f* is dropped. Learn the principal parts and the complete inflection (664).

412.

VOCABULARY

difficultās, difficultātis, *f.*, difficulty,
idem, eadem, idem, same (*identity*)
idem . . . quī, same . . . as
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive, -self
iste, ista, istud, this of yours,
that of yours
nihil, *n.*, indecl., nothing (*annihilate*)
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, *f.*, speech, plea
(*oration*)

rūrsus, *adv.*, again
nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvi, nūntiātus, report, announce (*annunciator*)
possum, posse, potui, —, be able, can (*potent*)
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, think, believe, reckon (*compute*)
spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus, hope (*prosperous*)

EXERCISES

413. 1. Potest, poterat, poterit. 2. Potuimus, potuerant, poterant. 3. Scīsne cūr ista verba audīrī nōn possint? 4. Eaēdem erant difficultātēs bellī quās vōbīs nūntiāre potuī. 5. Labiēnus ipse scīvit causās bellī plūrimās esse. 6. Putō mē hodiē nihil ēmptūrum esse. 7. Nōn iam pōstulant ut populus Rōmānus nāvēs praebeat. 8. Centuriō, quī cum octō explōrātōribus missus erat ut viam cognōsceret, nūntiāvit sē viam cognōscere nōn potuisse. 9. Omnēs spērābant Caesarem eā aestāte Gallōs victūrum esse. 10. Virī ipsī dicunt tēla iaci nōn posse.

414. 1. They have been able, he will be able, I could. 2. He had been able, they will have been able, we could. 3. The very children no longer desired peace. 4. They say that our allies are in the same danger to-day. 5. I think that I can stay two days with that friend of yours. 6. The traders reported that many bands of horsemen had been sent into the mountains. 7. I think that you can fight. 8. You thought that I could not come.

EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS LIII-LX

415. Give the English meanings of the following words :

alius	difficultas	nec	puto	solum
alter	dolor	neque	quartus	spem
cedo	duo	neuter	quattuor	tertius
celeritas	educco	nihil	quot	timor
coepi	fremitus	nullus	reddo	totus
cognoscō	idem	num	regio	tradicō
conlocō	ipse	nuntio	respondeo	tres
constituō	iste	octo	rogō	ullus
cōsulō	iubeo	oratio	rursus	unde
cupiō	iuvō	ostendō	sciō	undique
dēbeō	lacrima	paece	sentiō	ūnus
decimus	memoria	passus	simul	uter
dēpōnō	mille	possum	sinister	uterque
dexter	mille passum			

416. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

two	answer, reply	memory	give way, retire
one	nearly, almost	the other	think, believe, reckon
left	and not, nor	know	put down, lay aside
tear	give back, return	began	from all sides, everywhere
speed	other, another	three	no, no one, none
eight	how many	whence	lead out, lead forth
again	be able, can	help, aid	at the same time
four	show, display	hope	bid, order, command
mile	which (of two)	difficulty	this of yours, that of yours
ask	speech, plea	place	establish, determine
third	place, station	noise	alone, sole, only
neither	desire, wish	thousand	learn, know, understand
pace	report, announce	right	ought, be obliged to
nothing	whole, all	-self	give over, surrender

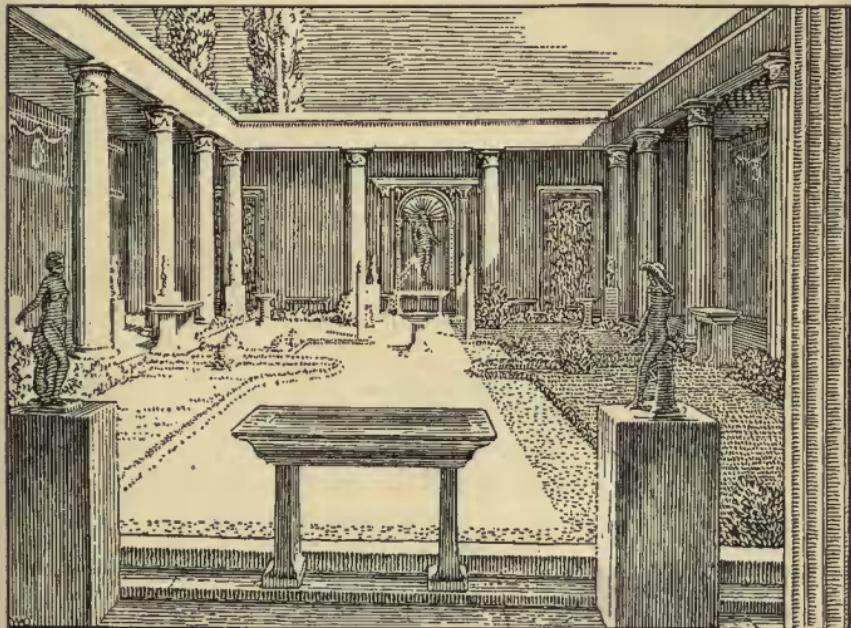
same	each, both	whether	feel, know, perceive
fourth	any (at all)	fear	plan, deliberate, consult
tenth	grief, pain		

417. Decline each noun, adjective, and pronoun in 415. Conjugate each verb in all tenses of the subjunctive mood. Make synopses. Give the infinitives of each verb.

418. Following the suggestions of 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 415. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

419. Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. Indirect questions | 5. Infinitive as object |
| 2. Objective genitive | 6. Indirect statements |
| 3. Infinitive as subject | 7. Accusative as subject of the
infinitive |
| 4. Infinitive as complement | |



INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON LXI

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

420. The Indefinite Pronouns. The indefinite pronouns (*ii, g*) are compounds of *quis* and of *qui*. The following indefinite pronouns will be used in this book:

aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, aliquod, *some, some one, any, any one*
quidam, quaedam, quiddam, quoddam, *a certain one, a certain*
quisquam, ——, quidquam (no plural), any one (at all) ~
quisque, quaeque, quidque, quodque, *each, each one, every, every one*

a. Learn the meanings and the declension of these pronouns (657).

b. The meanings of the neuters (*something, anything, etc.*) are easily inferred.

c. Observe how **aliqua**, which is both the feminine nominative singular and the neuter nominative and accusative plural of **aliquis**, differs from the corresponding forms of **quis**.

d. Observe that **quidam** (*qui + dam*) is declined like **qui**, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural **m** is changed to **n**; also that the neuter has **quiddam** and **quoddam** in the nominative and accusative singular.

e. In the neuter of all indefinites the **quid** forms are used as pronouns, and the **quod** forms as adjectives.

EXERCISES

421. 1. Duo nova flūmina ā quibusdam virīs audācībus reperta sunt. 2. Nōn iam quemquam ante domum vidēre possum. 3. Ut civēs timōre liberāret, arma statim trādi iussit. 4. Quidam captīvus idem rūrsus nūntiāvit. 5. Quisque aliquid respondēre potuerit. 6. Aliquae fēminae nōn sōlum perturbātæ erant, sed etiam fūgerant. 7. Lēgātus quemque ex finibus frūmentum

portāre iubēbit. 8. Quaedam legiō spē victōriæ Delphōs properābat. 9. Īnsulae similis est ista terra.

422. 1. Each says that the Gauls are approaching. 2. He does not demand anything at all. 3. That girl has something in her right hand. 4. A part of each summer we live among the mountains and hills. 5. To-day a story was told to us by somebody. 6. At the same time certain (men) came to Cæsar to demand help. 7. I know what each is able to do.

THE NATIONS OF GAUL

423. Gallia est omnis dīvisa (*divided*) in partīs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam eī qui Galli appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, quod prōvinciae Rōmānae propinqui nōn sunt neque mercātōrēs ad eōs saepe pervenient; proximique sunt Germānīs qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā (*for this reason*, 186) Helvētiī quoque fortiorēs quam reliquī Galli sunt. Cotidiānī ferē proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt, cum (*when*) aut (*either*) suīs finibus eōs prohibent aut (*or*) ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Ea pars quam Galli obtinent īitium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā (*Garonne*) flūmine, ūceanō, finibus Belgārum.



TABLE, VASE, AND LAMP STANDS

LESSON LXII

THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS · THE DATIVES OF PURPOSE AND REFERENCE

424. The Dative with Compounds.

1. *Quis equitibus praefuit?* *who commanded the horsemen?*
2. *Huic legiōni lēgātūm praefēcit,* *he put a lieutenant in charge of this legion.*

a. Observe that *praefuit*, which is a compound of *sum*, is intransitive. It does not admit a direct object, but does admit the indirect object *equitibus*. There are a number of Latin verbs which in their simple form take neither a direct nor an indirect object; when these verbs are compounded with a preposition, they have a meaning which may take an indirect object. Some compound verbs take both a direct and an indirect object: as, *praefēcit* in sentence 2.

425. Rule for the Dative with Compounds. *Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super, take a dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.*

426. The Datives of Purpose and Reference.

1. *Militēs ibi erant praeſidiō, soldiers were there as (for) a defense.*
2. *Militēs auxiliō eīs mittuntur, soldiers are sent as (for) a help to them.*

a. Observe that the datives *praeſidiō* and *auxiliō* are used to express the purpose for which something serves. This usage is called the *Dative of Purpose*. Often the dative of purpose is accompanied by another dative, called the *Dative of Reference*, denoting the person or thing served: as, *eīs* in sentence 2. This combination is known as the *Double Dative*.

427. Rule for the Dative of Purpose. *The dative is used to denote the purpose for which a thing serves.*

428. Rule for the Dative of Reference. *The dative is used to denote the person (or, rarely, the thing) affected by the action or situation expressed by the verb.*

429.**VOCABULARY**

mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, *f.*, fortification, defense (*ammunition*)
 praesidium, praesi'dī, *n.*, defense, protection, guard
 subsidium, subsi'dī, *n.*, help, aid
 ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, use, benefit, advantage (*useful*)
 dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, be lacking, be wanting, fail
 occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occur-sūrus, run toward, meet (*occur*)

praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, place in command of (*prefect*)
 praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus, surpass, be superior to
 praesum, praeesse, praefui, praefutūrus, be at the head of, command
 supersum, superesse, superfui, superfutūrus, be left over, survive

EXERCISES

430. 1. *Ūnum oppidum sociōrum ab hostibus diū oppugnātum erat, et mūnitiōnēs cotidiē yāstābantur.* 2. *Quod cibus et arma cīvibus deesse coepérunt, socii rogāvērunt ut Caesar cōpiās auxiliō mitteret.* 3. *Itaque Caesar Labiēnum ūni legiōni praefēcit et eum subsidiō cīvibus misit.* 4. *In itinere Labiēnus hostibus occurrit, quī omnibus ex partibus vēnerant ut oppidum caperent.* 5. *Pila impedimentō nostris, sed magnō ūsuī gladiī erant.* 6. *Nostrī hostibus praestitērunt et eōs superāvērunt.* 7. *Labiēnus dixit sē cīvibus praesidiō futūrum esse.* 8. *Scisne quis ei oppidō praefuerit?*

431. 1. Courage did not often fail Cæsar. 2. He commanded brave men. 3. He was a protection to his country. 4. He did not survive his last (*proximus*) wars many years. 5. He was superior to the chiefs of the Gauls and the Germans. 6. He placed lieutenants in charge over the nations which had been conquered. 7. The sea is many feet deeper than this lake.

LESSON LXIII

THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS · THE IRREGULAR VERBS *VOLO*, *NOLO*, *MALO*

432. The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs.

1. *Legiōnī imperat*, *he commands a legion*.
2. *Amīcō meō persuādet*, *he persuades my friend*.

a. Observe that *legiōnī* and *amīcō* are in the dative case, while the English equivalents are in the objective case. It is obvious, therefore, that the Latin verbs *imperō* and *persuādeō* are intransitive, and that they admit an indirect object.

Verbs of ATTITUDE or HELP
433. *Rule for the Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs.* Most verbs meaning believe, favor, help, please, trust, and their opposites, also command, obey, pardon, persuade, resist, serve, spare, and the like, take a dative of the indirect object.

a. Such verbs used in this book are *crēdō*, *believe*; *faveō*, *favor*; *imperō*, *command*; *noceō*, *harm*; *persuādeō*, *persuade*; *placeō*, *please*; *resistō*, *resist*; and *studeō*, *desire, be eager for*.

b. Observe that *imperō* has an indirect object, while *iubeō* takes a direct object.

434. *The Irregular Verbs *Volō*, *Nōlō*, and *Mālō*.* Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of *volō*, *wish*, *nōlō* (*nē + volō*), *be unwilling*, and *mālō* (*magis volō*), *be more willing, prefer*, in the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive (665).

435.

VOCABULARY

<i>mulier, mulieris, f.</i> , woman	<i>crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus</i> ,
<i>neque . . . neque</i> , neither . . . nor	<i>believe, trust (creditor)</i>
<i>occāsus, -ūs, m.</i> , setting (occasion)	<i>faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, favor</i>
<i>sōl, sōlis, m.</i> , sun (solstice)	<i>(favor)</i>

mālō, mālle, māluī, —, be more
willing, prefer
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus,
harm, injure (*obnoxious*)
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be un-
willing
persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī,
persuāsus, persuade (*persua-
sive*) *vt vs*

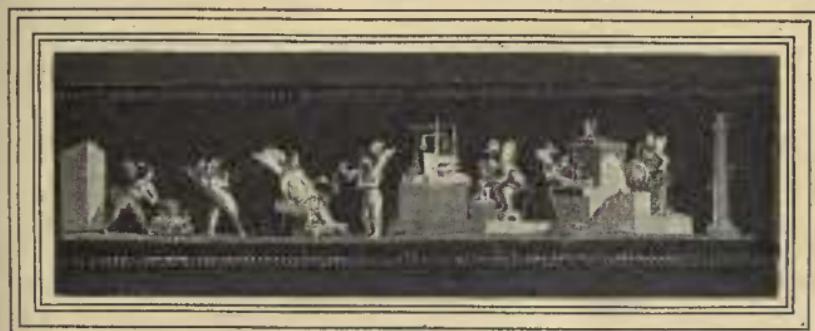
m

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitūrus,
please, be pleasing to (*placidly*)
resistō, resistere, restitī, —,
resist, oppose (*resistance*)
studeō, studēre, studuī, —, be
eager for, desire (*student*)
volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing,
wish (*volition*)

EXERCISES

436. 1. Vultis, nōlumus, māvīs. 2. Mercātōribus nōn crē-
dit. 3. Nōlle, māluisse. 4. Vōbīs persuādēre volunt. 5. Vult
mihi favēre. 6. Neque nōlunt tibi nocēre. 7. Tibi auxiliō esse
mālumus. 8. Cūr nōn vīs mātri tuae esse praesidiō? 9. Putā-
mus eum voluisse equitātuī praeesse. 10. Sōlis occāsū militēs
castra hostium capient. 11. Paucae enim ex hīs nātiōnibus
bellō student. 12. Militibus imperāvit ut fortiter Gallis resis-
tent. 13. Neque mulierēs neque liberī timēbant.

437. 1. They were wishing, I shall be unwilling, she will
prefer. 2. They were not willing to help our men. 3. They were
not able to please your friends. 4. And they did not persuade
the general. 5. He will command them not to harm the women.
6. Neither the Gauls nor the Germans desired war at that time.



WALL DECORATION OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON LXIV

READING LESSON

BELLING THE CAT

438. Quidam mūrēs aliquandō concilium habēbant, nam fēlem maximē timēbant. Cōnsilia quae prōposita sunt omnibus nōn placēbant. Tandem ūnus ex mūribus ita dixit: "Tintinnābulum caudae fēlis adnectere dēbēmus. Sic enim sonitū eius monēbimur et fugere poterimus. Quis vestrum hoc facere vult?" Sed nūlli ex sociis persuādēre potuit ut tintinnābulum fēli adnecteret, et ipse nōluit. Ea fābula docet plūrimōs iñ suādendō¹ esse audācēs sed in ipsō periculō timidōs.

NASICA AND ENNIUS

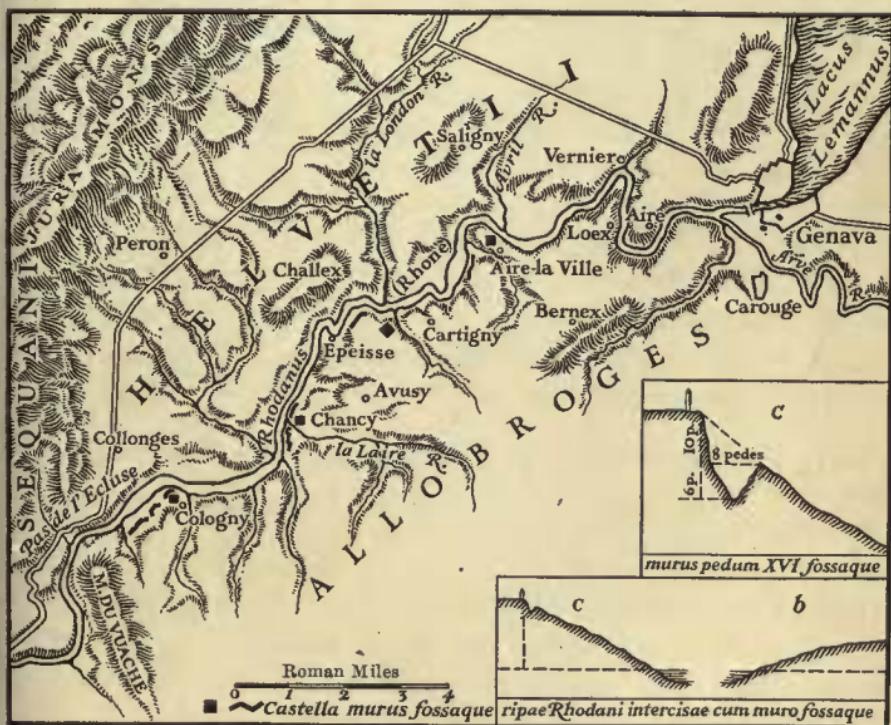
439. Nāsica aliquandō ad poētam² Ennium vēnit et dē eō quaesivit. Ancilla respondit Ennium domī³ nōn esse. Nāsica autem sēnsit illam dominī iussū hoc dixisse et Ennium domī esse. Paucis post diēbus⁴ Ennius ad Nāsicam vēnit. Ei exclāmat Nāsica sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius dixit, "Quid Ego nōn cognōscō vōcem tuam?" Hic⁵ Nāsica: "Homō es impudēns. Ego ancillae tuae crēdidi; tū mihi ipsi nōn crēdis?"

ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETIANS

440. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus erat Orgetorix. Iērēgnī cupiditātē inductus est et coniūrātiōnem nōbilitatis fēcit. Tum civitātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiis properārent. Facilius eis persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā

¹ suādendō, offering advice. ² ad poētam, to the house of the poet. ³ domī at home. ⁴ paucis post diēbus, a few days later. ⁵ hīc, adv., hereupon.

Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte (*on one side*) flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētiōrum ā Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā (ex parte) lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dīvidit. Propter multitudinem hominum et glōriam belli angustōs sē finēs habēre putābant, qui in longitūdinem milia passuum ccXL (ducenta quadrāgintā), in lātitūdinem CLXXX (centum octōgintā) patēbant.



MAP OF HELVETIA.

perf. *int. (a. n. m.)* *laudatus (a. m.)*
Fut. *urus* - *urus* - *urus* - *ndus (a. m.)*

LESSON LXV

PARTICIPLES

441. Participles. Learn the participles of the model verbs (658–662), and their meanings.

a. Observe that the present active and the future passive participles are formed from the present stem by the addition of **-ns** and **-ndus**, with certain changes in quantity; and the future active and the perfect passive from the participial stem by the addition of **-ūrus** and **-us**. But observe that in verbs of the fourth conjugation and of the third conjugation ending in **-iō** the present active participle has **-iēns** and the future "passive" participle has **-iendus**. Form the participles of **gerō**, **videō**, **iaciō**, **vāstō**, and **mūniō**.

442. The Declension of Participles. Participles in **-ns** are declined like **amāns** (645). The ablative singular ending is **-e**; but the ending is **-ī** when the word is used as an adjective. The other participles are declined like **bonus** (643). Decline the participles of **gerō**.

443. The Agreement of Participles. Since participles are verbal adjectives (xxxiv), they agree with nouns or pronouns in gender, number, and case.

444. The Tenses of Participles. The present active participle is used of an action going on at the same time as the action of the main verb: as, **tē labōrāntem videō**, *I see you working*; **tē labōrāntem vidi**, *I saw you working*.

The perfect passive participle is used of an action that is completed at the time of the action of the main verb: as, **mīles vulnērātus domum vēnit**, *the soldier, having been wounded, came home*.

The future active and passive participles are used of actions which are to occur after the time of the action of the main

verb. In this book the future active participle is used only in the formation of the future active infinitive (392, d). The uses of the future passive participle will be explained later (471-473).

445. The Translation of Participles.

1. **Tē in urbe manentem vidi**, *I saw you when you were staying in the city.*
2. **Urbs diū oppugnāta nōn capta est**, *the city, though besieged for a long time, was not taken.*
3. **Caesar eā rē commōtus in Galliam properāvit**, *Cæsar, because he was alarmed by this circumstance, hastened into Gaul.*
4. **Dux victus sē recipiet**, *the general, if defeated, will retreat.*
5. **Dōna missa recēpit**, *he received the gifts which had been sent.*
6. **Caesar p̄incipem captum Rōmam mīsit**, *Cæsar captured a chieftain and sent him to Rome.*

a. Observe that in the first five sentences the participle is translated by clauses of *time*, *concession*, *cause*, and *condition*, and by a *relative clause*. In 6 the participle is translated by a coördinate verb. Note the words which introduce the different clauses. When you meet a participle, consider which of these six ways best brings out the thought of the sentence and translate accordingly. Do not translate a participle literally.

446.

VOCABULARY.

hiberna, -ōrum, <i>n. plur.</i> , winter quarters (<i>hibernate</i>)	moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, move (<i>motion</i>)
commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus, disturb, move, arouse (<i>commotion</i>)	redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductus, lead back (<i>reduce</i>)

EXERCISES

447. 1. Alii militēs fugientēs capti sunt. 2. Hīs rēbus impediti eō diē impetum nōn fēcērunt. 3. Alter centuriō p̄imā in aciē pugnāns vulnerātus est. 4. Ad nostrōs militēs castra oppugnantis auxilium missum erat. 5. Quaedam mulierēs in oppidō relictae sē dēfendere cōstituērunt. 6. Pars hostium

adventū Caesaris commōta sōlis occāsū discessit. 7. In hibernis
reductōs mīlitēs relinquébat. 8. Multitūdō servōrum territa ex
urbe fugiēbat. 9. Posterō diē castra mōvērunt.

448. 1. A certain man, while resisting, was wounded by an enemy. 2. Although wounded, they fought so bravely that they could not be captured. 3. Since he was disturbed by the difficulties of the march, he decided to lead back his legions. 4. Those horsemen who were sent ahead resisted the Gauls long and bravely. 5. If asked concerning your plans, I shall say nothing. 6. The leaders will be captured and sent to Italy.



GALLI CAPTI IN CASTRA REDUCUNTUR

LESSON LXVI

READING LESSON

DICTA ANTIQUORUM

449. 1. Lacaena filio in proelium properanti dixit, "Aut in scūtō aut cum scūtō."

2. Leōnidās militi nūntianti, "Hostēs nōbis propinquī sunt," respondit, "Etiam nōs hostibus propinquī sumus."

3. Thalēs interrogātus, "Quid hominibus commūne est?" respondit, "Spēs; hanc enim etiam illi habent qui nihil aliud habent."

4. Āgis mūrōs firmōs altōsque Corinthī spectāns rogāvit, "Quārum mulierum haec urbs est?"

5. Aristotelem quidam rogāvit, "Quid est amīctia?" Ille respondit, "Ūnus animus in duōbus corporibus."

6. Cicerō dixit, "Nōn potest exercitū is continēre imperātor qui sē ipse nōn continet."

450.

VOCABULARY

rēgnū, -ī, n., kingdom (*inter-regnum*)

addūcō, addūcere, addūxi, adduc-tus, lead to, influence (*adduce*)

obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obten-

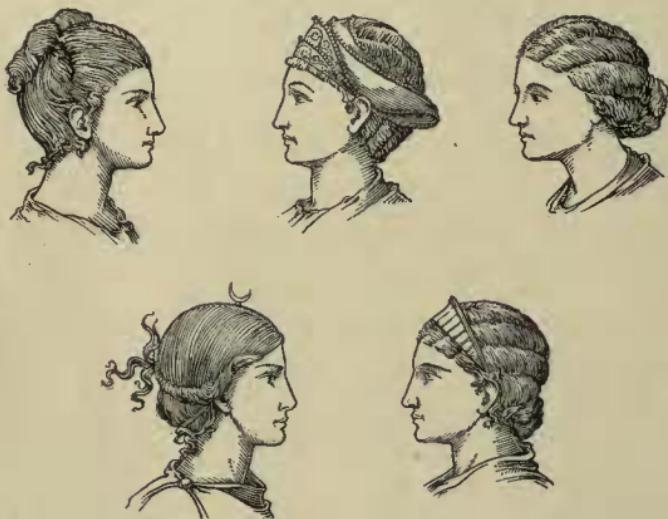
tus, possess, occupy, hold (*obtain*)

suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpi, sus-cep-tus, take up, undertake (*susceptible*)

ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETIANS (CONTINUED FROM 440)

451. His rēbus adducti et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōti Helvētiī cōstituērunt carrōrum maximum numerum emere, cōpiam frūmentī parāre, pācēm et amīctiam cum proximis civi-ātibus cōfirmāre. Orgetorīx interim lēgātiōnem ad civitātēs

suscēpit. In eō itinere persuāsit Casticō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquaniis multōs anñōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populi Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitātē suā occupāret. Cuidam aliī pīncipi persūasit ut idem faceret. Ōrātiōne Orgetorīgis adductī hī pīncipēs inter sē obsidēs dant, et tōtam Galliam sēsē occupāre posse spērant. Helvētiī autem hoc cōnsilium nōn probāvērunt. Itaque multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs coēgērunt ut cōnsilia Orgetorīgis prohibērent. Sed eō tempore Orgetorīx subitō mortuus est (*died*).



ROMAN STYLES OF HAIRDRESSING

LESSON LXVII

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

452. The Ablative Absolute.

1. *Cōnsul, castris mūnitīs, Rōmam vēnit, with the camp fortified, the consul came to Rome.*
2. *Caesare dūcente, semper vincimus, with Cāesar leading, we always conquer.*
3. *Caesare duce, vincēmus, with Cāesar as leader, we shall conquer.*

a. Observe that the ablatives in these sentences are so loosely connected with the rest of the sentence that they are grammatically independent. Because of its loose connection with the sentence this usage of the ablative is known as the *Ablative Absolute* (*ab + solvō*).

453. How to translate the Ablative Absolute. The ablative absolute is usually translated, not as above, but by a clause : thus,

1. *When (because, although, if) the camp had been fortified, the consul came to Rome.*
2. *When (because, although, if) Cāesar is leading, we always conquer.*
3. *When (because, although, if) Cāesar is leader, we shall conquer.*

The method of translation in any particular sentence must be determined by asking which kind of clause best expresses the thought of the sentence as a whole.

454. The Formation of the Ablative Absolute. The ablative absolute may be formed by a noun or pronoun with a participle (as in 452, 1 and 2); or by a noun or pronoun with another noun or an adjective (as in 452, 3). The present active and perfect passive participles are used in this construction. Since the verb *sum* has no present participle, a participle is not expressed when the ablative absolute is formed as it is in 452, 3 : *Caesare duce, Cāesar (being) leader.*

a. An ablative absolute containing a perfect passive participle expresses an action that occurred before the action expressed by the main verb of the sentence; one containing a present participle expresses an action occurring at the same time as that of the main verb.

b. The Latin perfect participle is not found in the active voice. Accordingly such a sentence as *Cæsar, having defeated the Gauls, returned to Rome* has to be recast into the form *Cæsar, the Gauls having been defeated, returned to Rome, Caesar, Gallis victis, Rōmam rediit.*

c. The noun of the ablative absolute is always a different person or thing from the subject or object of the sentence.

455. Rule for the Ablative Absolute. *The ablative of a noun or pronoun, with a participle, a noun, or an adjective in agreement, is used to express time, cause, concession, condition, or other relations.*

456.

VOCABULARY

dēditiō, dēditiōnis, f., surrender
ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis, f., sally, sortie
(eruption)

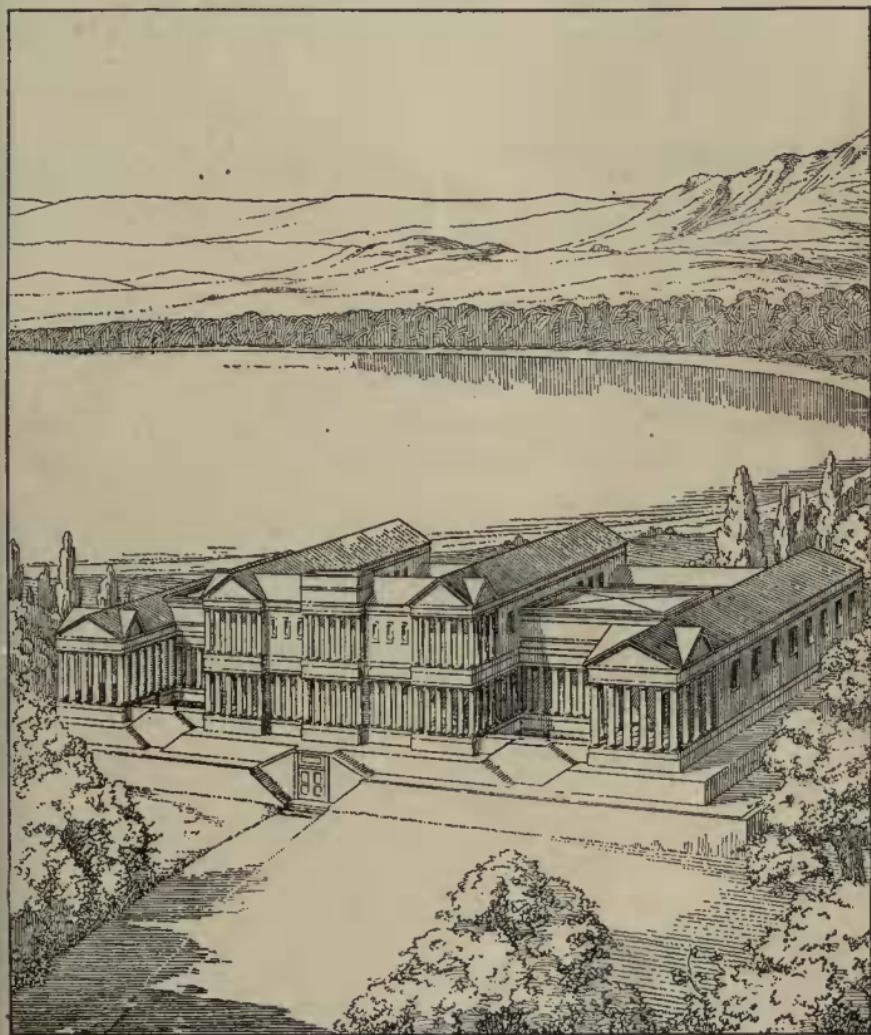
medius, -a, -um, middle of
(medium)

rīpa, -ae, f., bank (riparian)

EXERCISES

457. 1. Hostibus victis, per mediam prōvinciam iter facere cōstituit. 2. Cāesare cōnsule, cum Gallis longum erat bellum. 3. Oppidō quōdam expugnātō, castra in rīpis ipsīs huius flūminis posuērunt. 4. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mīsērunt. 5. Hī rēbus repertīs, omnēs bellō studēbant. 6. Hoc oppidum, paucīs dēfendentibus, Rōmānī capere nōn potuērunt. 7. Captīvīs in dēditiōnem acceptīs, dux subsidiō castrīs trēs cohortēs reliquit. 8. Hī captīvī eīdem fortissimē pugnantēs captī erant. 9. Quis praefuit equitibus qui imperātōrī auxiliō missī sunt? 10. Urbe mūnitā, cīvēs nōn iam terrēbāntur.

458. 1. When he had heard these words, he was much disturbed. 2. When the city had been taken, the soldiers set the prisoners free. 3. The enemy resisted our men all day. 4. If Labienus is leader, our army will be able to injure the enemy. 5. Labienus, having captured the mountain, was waiting for our men. 6. Although a sortie was made, they were not able to approach our first line.



A COUNTRY VILLA

LESSON LXVIII

THE GERUND · THE IRREGULAR VERB *EO*

459. The Gerund. The gerund (xxxii, *c*) is a verbal noun used in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. It is formed by adding *-ndī*, *-ndō*, *-ndum*, *-ndō* to the present stem, with certain changes in quantity and spelling. Learn the gerunds of the model verbs (658–662).

460. What the Gerund is. The gerund is like the English verbal noun in *-ing*, as, *loving*; but it lacks a nominative case. For the nominative the infinitive is used.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>amāre, to love, loving</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>amandī, of loving</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>amandō, for loving</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>amandum, loving</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>amandō, by loving</i>

461. The Uses of the Gerund. The gerund is used in the various constructions of nouns. Since it is a *verbal* noun, it may have a direct or an indirect object: as, *vincendō hostēs by overcoming the enemy*; *resistendō hostibus, by resisting the enemy*. Also observe the following:

1. *Ad pugnandum vēnērunt, they came for fighting, for the purpose of fighting, to fight.*
2. *Pugnandi causā vēnērunt, they came for the sake of fighting to fight.*

a. Observe that the accusative of the gerund with *ad*, or the genitive of the gerund with *causā*, is used to express purpose. *Causā* when so used follows its genitive. This method of expressing purpose is used in brief statements.

462. The Irregular Verb *Eō*. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of the irregular verb *eō* (667).

a. Observe where *i* (the root of *eō*) is changed to *e* in the present indicative and subjunctive, in the present participle, and in the gerund. In the perfect system *-v-* is regularly dropped. For the declension of the present participle see 645.

463.

VOCABULARY

causā, *abl. of causa*, for the sake
of, to

nōmen, *nōminis*, *n.*, name (*nomi-*
nate)

spatium, *spati*, *n.*, room, space,
time, opportunity (*spacious*)

vallum, *-i*, *n.*, rampart, earth-
works (*interval*)

accēdō, *accēdere*, *accessī*, *accessū-*
rus, come near, approach (*ac-*
cession)

coniciō, *conicere*, *coniēcī*, *coniectus*,
throw, hurl (*conjecture*)

eō, *ire*, *ii* (*ivī*), *itūrus*, go (*initial*)
ōrō, *ōrāre*, *ōrāvī*, *ōrātus*, speak,
plead, beg (*orator*)

EXERCISES

464. 1. *It, īmus, ībant.* 2. *Īre, īsse, ībunt.* 3. *Eunt, ierant, iiit.*
4. *Difficultātem nāvigandī nūntiāvit.* 5. *Haec est causa mit-*
tendi. 6. *Litterās mittendī causā vēnit.* 7. *Diligentia in agendō* 
duci placet. 8. *Spatium pugnandī nōn datum est.* 9. *Caesar*
finem ūrandī fēcit. 10. *Spatium pīla in hostīs coniciendi breve*
suit. 11. *Accessērunt ad dicendum.* 12. *Vōbiscum ībit ut*
nōmina eōrum roget. 13. *Voluit cognōscere quō īssent.* 14. *La-*
biēnus imperāvit ut castra vällō mūnirentur.

465. 1. You are going, they were going, he had gone. 2. We
shall go, you will have gone. 3. Whither have they gone?
4. He persuades them to go. 5. He ordered them to go.
6. They came near for the sake of seeking peace. 7. Time
was not given for pleading. 8. They went toward the sea for
the purpose of sailing. 9. That day they went three miles, and
at sunset pitched camp.

NINTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS LXI-LXVIII

466. Give the English meanings of the following words :

accēdō	ēruptiō	noceō	praesidium	sōl
addūcō	faveō	nōlō	praestō	spatiū
aliquis	hiberna	nōmen	praesum	studeō
causā	mālō	obtineō	quīdam	subsidiū
commoveō	medius	occāsus	quisquam	supersum
coniciō	moveō	occurrō	quisque	suscipiō
crēdō	mulier	ōrō	redūcō	ūsus
dēditiō	mūnītiō	persuādeō	rēgnūm	vällum
dēsum	neque . . .	placeō	resistō	volō
eō	neque	praeficiō	ripa	

467. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

neither . . . nor	kingdom	use, benefit, advantage
be unwilling	bank	each, each one, every, every one
be left over, survive	throw, hurl	possess, occupy, hold
be willing, wish	favor	disturb, move, arouse
resist, oppose	sun	surpass, be superior to
believe, trust	surrender	rampart, earthworks
place in command	move	be at the head of, command
for the sake of, to	harm, injure	some, some one, any, any one
be eager for, desire	help, aid	be more willing, prefer
speak, plead, beg	middle of	defense, protection, guard
sally, sortie	name	be lacking, be wanting, fail
lead to, influence	woman	come near, approach
winter quarters	persuade	please, be pleasing to
take up, undertake	lead back	room, space, time, opportunity
run towards, meet	setting	a certain one, a certain
any one (at all)	go	fortification, defense

468. Decline the nouns in 466. Decline the indefinite pronouns. Give the principal parts of each verb. Give the participles of each verb. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural. Conjugate **volō**, **nōlō**, and **eō** throughout.

469. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 466. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

470. Give the rule, if there is one, for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Dative with compounds | 5. Participles as the equivalent
of certain clauses |
| 2. Dative of purpose | 6. Ablative absolute |
| 3. Dative of reference | 7. Gerund |
| 4. Dative with special intransitive verbs | |



WALL DECORATION OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON LXIX

THE GERUNDIVE · THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERO*

471. **The Gerundive.** The future passive participle (441, 444) is more commonly called the *Gerundive*. It is a verbal adjective, and must be distinguished from the gerund, which is a verbal noun. The gerund, being a noun, may be used alone or with an object; but the gerundive, being an adjective, must agree with a noun.

472. The Gerundive used in Place of the Gerund.

1. *Pācem petendi causā vēnērunt*, they came for the purpose of seeking peace.
2. *Pācis petendae causā vēnērunt*, they came for the purpose of seeking peace.

a. Observe that the Latin sentences have the same meaning, and that 1 contains a gerund, *petendī*, with an object, *pācem*; while 2 contains a gerundive, *petendae*, in agreement with *pācis*. Instead of a gerund with an object, the Romans much preferred the gerundive construction, except occasionally in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.

473. **The Gerundive used in the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.** The gerundive is also used with forms of *sum* as a predicate adjective. This is known as the *Passive Periphrastic Conjugation*. For a synopsis see 670.

1. *Miles laudandus est*, the soldier is to be praised, must be praised, ought to be praised.
2. *Cornēlia laudanda erat*, Cornelia was to be praised, ought to have been praised, needed to be praised.

a. Observe that these sentences express necessity. Observe, too, the methods of translation.

474. The Irregular Verb *Ferō*. Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of the irregular verb *ferō* (666).

475.**VOCABULARY**

libertās, libertatis, f., freedom
(*liberty*)

signum, -ī, n., sign, signal (*signify*)

vis, vis, f., force, strength, power,
might (642) (*violence*)

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, in-
crease, enlarge (auction)

conveniō, convenire, convēnī, con-
ventūrus, come together, as-
semble (convene)

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, bring;
report, say (transfer)

EXERCISES

476. 1. Fert, ferimus, ferent. 2. Ferre, feret, tulisse. 3. Rūr-sus veniunt ut auxilium ferant. 4. Tulerant, lātus esse. 5. In petendā pāce. 6. Libertatis petendae causā. 7. Viribus augen-dis. 8. Pontis faciendi. 9. Legiō ad bellum gerendum sē parat. 10. Multī convēnērunt urbis novae videndae causā. 11. Signum dandum erat. 12. Signō datō, mīlitēs impetum summā celeritātē fēcērunt. 13. Omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant. 14. Putāmus bellum parandum esse. 15. Ad pīla conienda tempus dēfuit. 16. Arma in hiberna ferenda sunt.

477. 1. You are bearing, they bear, he had borne. 2. You have borne, they were bearing, by bearing. 3. Help was being brought. 4. They said that they should bring the shields. 5. Of seeing the town. 6. For the sake of drawing up a line of battle. 7. By carrying on war. 8. In laying waste the fields. 9. The strength of the allies is being increased daily. 10. The force of the enemy must be borne. 11. The cohort must be led back with speed. 12. A lieutenant ought to have been put in command of these troops.

LESSON LXX

READING LESSON

478.

VOCABULARY

mors, mortis *f.*, death (*mortality*)
 privātus, -a, -um, private, personal
 (*private*)
 vadum, -i, *n.*, ford, shoal
 vel . . . vel, *conj.*, either . . . or
 exeō, exire, exiī, exitūrus, go out,
 go forth (*exit*)
 incendō, incendere, incendi, incēn-
 sus, burn, kindle, excite (*in-
 cendiary*)

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus,
 begin (*incipient*)
 pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātus, sub-
 due, pacify
 permittō, permittere, permīsī, per-
 missus, allow, suffer, give up
 (*permission*)
 pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, —
 extend, pertain to (*pertinent*)
 trānseō, trānsire, trānsiī, trānsi-
 tus, go across, cross (*transit*)

THE HELVETIANS LEAVE THEIR TERRITORY

479. Post Orgetorīgis mortem tamen Helvētiī id quod cōn-
 stituerant facere incēpērunt, ut ē finibus suis exirent. Ubi iam
 sē ad eam rem parātōs esse putāvērunt, oppida sua omnia et
 vicōs et privāta aedificia incendērunt. Frūmentum et cibum
 sibi quemque domō ferre iussērunt. Persuāsērunt quibusdam
 civitātibus fīnitimīs ut oppidīs suis vicīisque incēnsis cum eis
 exirent.

Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire po-
 terant: unum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter monter
 Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum; mōns autem altissimus impendē-
 bat, ut facile paucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvincian
 Rōmānam, multō facilius, quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum e
 Allobrogum, qui nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nō
 nullis locīs vadō trānsītūr.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogib⁹ sēsē vel persuāsūrōs esse vel vī coāctūrōs esse spērābant ut per suōs finēs eōs īre permetterent. Omnibus rēbus parātis diem conveniēdī dicunt.

Caesar per nūntiōs audīvit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere coepisse. Statim properāvit Rōmā et quam maximis potuit. itineribus¹ in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervēnit. Prōvinciae tōti quam maximum potuit mīlitum numerum imperāvit (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriore legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iussit rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī cognōvērunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt.

¹ quam maximis (potuit) itineribus, by as long journeys as possible. Sometimes Cæsar traveled a hundred miles a day.



DINING COUCHES

LESSON LXXI

THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION · DEPONENT VERBS

480. The Ablative of Specification.

Gallōs virtūte superant, they surpass the Gauls in courage.

a. Observe that the ablative *virtute* tells in what respect the Gauls are surpassed. This usage is known as the *Ablative of Specification*.

481. Rule for the Ablative of Specification. The ablative without a preposition is used to denote in what respect something is true.

482. Deponent Verbs. Deponent verbs are verbs which have passive forms with active meanings. They occur in each of the regular conjugations, and are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive: first conjugation, -*ārī*; second, -*ērī*; third, -*i*; fourth, -*īrī*. Learn the principal parts, the meanings, and the conjugation of the deponent verbs in 669.

483. The Active Forms and the Participles of Deponent Verbs. A deponent verb has the following active forms:

Fut. Infin. hortātūrus esse *Gerund* hortandī, etc.

It has the participles of both voices:

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāns, <i>urging</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	hortātus, <i>having urged</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātūrus, <i>about to urge, going to urge</i>	<i>Gerundive</i>	hortandus, <i>to be urged</i>

a. Observe that the perfect participle of deponent verbs is active in meaning; the gerundive is passive. As the perfect participle is active in meaning, an ablative absolute (454, b) is seldom necessary with this participle; instead, the construction is the same as in English: as,

Hortatus milites signum dedit, having encouraged the soldiers
he gave the signal, or, when he had encouraged, etc.

484.

VOCABULARY

cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum, try, attempt (<i>conative</i>)	proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, set out, march
experior, experiri, expertus sum, test, make trial of (<i>experience</i>)	prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum, go forward, advance (<i>progress</i>)
hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, urge, entreat (<i>exhortation</i>)	sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, follow (<i>sequence</i>)
polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum, promise, offer	vereor, verēri, veritus sum, fear, respect (<i>reverence</i>)

EXERCISES

485. 1. Experiēbāmī, cōnāmur, hortāberis. 2. Pollicēbantur, experiuntur, veritī erāmus. 3. Ut sequātur, verēns, sequendō. 4. Proficiscētūr, sequendi causā, secūtūrus esse. 5. Veritī sunt, secūtūrus, prōgredientur. 6. Cōnātūr, expertus esse, ad prōgrediendum. 7. Verēmī mortem. 8. Caesar hortātūs est militēs ut ducēs sequerentur. 9. Illō diē exercitus proficiscēbātūr. 10. Ipse cum celeritāte eōs sequētūr. 11. His persuāserant ut eandem fortūnam belli experīrentur. 12. Nātiōnēs Germāniae subsidium pollicitae erant. 13. Per finēs nostrōs ire cōnantur. 14. Puer patri virtūte similis erat.

486. 1. He was urging, they urge, they will follow. 2. She has followed, he fears, to attempt. 3. They had followed many miles. 4. You will set out, they will advance, going to follow. 5. Having followed, to have advanced. 6. Cæsar ordered the same two legions to set out. 7. They do not follow the tribune. 8. They will set out at daybreak in order to follow the enemy. 9. Although they promised grain, they were unable to bring it because of a lack of carts. 10. The poor soldiers are tired [in] body, but they surpass the enemy [in] speed.

LESSON LXXII

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH **CUM** · THE IRREGULAR VERB **FIO**

487. Temporal Clauses with *Cum*. The Latin conjunction *cum*, *-when*, *while*, introduces temporal clauses (xx, e).

1. *Cum Caesar in Italiā erat, bellum in Galliā ortum est, when (while) Cæsar was in Italy, a war began in Gaul.*
2. *Caesar, cum id nūntiātum esset, in Galliam contendit, Cæsar, when this had been reported, hastened into Gaul.*
3. *Cum nūntius pervēnerit, Caesar prōgrediētur, when the messenger arrives, Cæsar will advance.*

a. Observe that the temporal clause in sentence 1 *fixes the time* at which the war began, and that its verb is in the indicative. Observe that the clause in sentence 2 *describes the circumstances* under which Cæsar was impelled to hasten into Gaul, and that its verb is in the subjunctive. Observe that the temporal clause in sentence 3 *refers to future time*, and that its verb is in the indicative.

488. Rule for Temporal Clauses with *Cum*. *Temporal clauses referring to past time, when introduced by cum, have their verb in the indicative if they fix the time of an action, but in the subjunctive if they describe the circumstances of an action. The indicative is used in temporal clauses introduced by cum referring to present or to future time.*

489. The Irregular Verb *Fio*. The verb *faciō*, which you have frequently used in the active voice, forms its present system in the passive from the irregular verb *fio*. Learn the principal parts of *fio* and its conjugation (668). Review the complete inflection of *faciō*. The passive voice of the compounds of *faciō* is inflected regularly.

490.

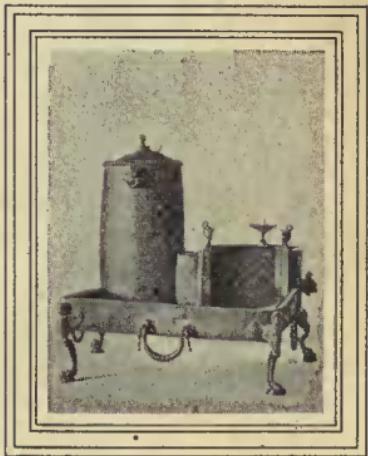
VOCABULARY

certus, -a, -um, certain, sure
cum, *conj.*, when, while
frumentarius, -a, -um, of grain;
 rēs frumentaria, grain supply,
 provisions
nē . . . quidem, not even (*the word*
or words between nē and quidem
are emphasized)

paulō, *adv.*, a little
fiō, fierī, factus sum, be made,
 be done, happen, *become*
certiōrem facere (to make more
 sure), to inform
certior fierī (to be made more
 sure), to be informed

EXERCISES

491. 1. Fit, fiunt. 2. Fierī, factus esse. 3. Fiet, fiēbant,
 fiō. 4. Fiētis, fiēmus. 5. Eum certiōrem fēcimus. 6. Certior
 fit dē his rēbus. 7. Galli, cum oppi-
 dum cēpissent, omnēs captivōs inter-
 fēcērunt. 8. Cum dē inopiā rei
 frumentariae certior factus esset, in
 ulteriōrem partem prōvinciae paulō
 ante medianam noctem profectus est.
 9. Nē amīci quidem dē adventū
 tuō certiōrēs fient. 10. Cum proeli-
 finem nox fēcisset, quidam ad
 Caesarem vēnit. 11. Cum equitātum
 hostium vīdērunt, nostri in eōs im-
 petum fēcērunt.



A ROMAN STOVE

492. 1. You are becoming, they become. 2. It happens, to
 be made, it will be made. 3. When you come, you will learn
 this. 4. They have been informed. 5. I shall inform them.
 6. When he was not able to persuade them, he went to the
 general. 7. Not even the general had been informed about
 this. 8. When the lieutenant had exhorted the soldiers, he
 gave the signal for battle.

LESSON LXXIII

READING LESSON

493.

VOCABULARY

altitūdō, altitūdinis, <i>f.</i> , height <i>(altitude)</i>	existimō, existimāre, existimāvī, existimātus, think, judge, consider <i>(estimate)</i>
castellum, -i, <i>n.</i> , fort, redoubt <i>(castle)</i>	pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, beat, drive, defeat <i>(repel)</i>
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis, <i>f.</i> , custom	perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus, accomplish, finish <i>(perfect)</i>
facultās, facultatis, <i>f.</i> , power, opportunity <i>(faculty)</i>	temperō, temperāre, temperāvī, temperātus, control, refrain, abstain from <i>(temperance)</i>
fossa, -ae, <i>f.</i> , ditch, trench <i>(fosse)</i>	

CÆSAR REFUSES THE HELVETIANS PERMISSION TO GO THROUGH THE ROMAN PROVINCE

494. Cum lēgātī Helvētiōrum rogāvissent ut per prōvinciam ire permitterentur, Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat cōsulem Rōmānum interfectum (*esse*)¹ ab Helvētiis et exercitum eius pulsum (*esse*) et sub iugum missum (*esse*), concēdendum (*esse*) nōn putābat; neque Helvētiōs, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī, temperatūrōs ab iniūriā existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium militum cōgendōrum, quōs imperāverat, esset, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad conloquium dictūrum.

Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant ā lacū Lemannō, qui in flūmen Rhodanum fluit, ad montem Iūram, qui finis Sēquanōrum ab-

¹ Frequently *esse* is omitted in Latin infinitive forms. From which infinitives in this lesson is it omitted?

Helvētiis dīvidit, milia passuum xviiiī mūrum in altitūdinem pedum xvi fossamque perdūxit. Eō opere perfectō praeſidia conlocāvit, castella mūnīvit, ut facilius eōs prohibēre posset.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum vēnērunt, dixit sē propter cōsuētūdinem populi Rōmānī iter nūlli per prōvinciam dare posse ; et eōs prohibitūrum ostendit.



ROMAN ARMY CROSSING A BRIDGE OF BOATS

LESSON LXXIV

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT INTRODUCED BY QUOD THE INDICATIVE IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

495. Substantive Clauses of Fact with *Quod*.

Quod eum laudās, mihi grātum est, the fact that you praise him is pleasing to me.

a. Observe that the clause *quod eum laudās* is the subject of *est*. Such clauses, which should be translated by *that* or *the fact that*, are called *Quod Clauses of Fact*, and have their verb in the indicative. They are found as the subject of a verb or in apposition with some word.

496. *Rule for Substantive Clauses of Fact.* *The indicative is used with quod in a substantive clause to state something which is regarded as a fact.*

497. Adverbial Clauses with the Verb in the Indicative.

1. *Ibunt quā iter facillimum est, they will go where the way is easiest.*
2. *Quaedam nātiōnēs Galliae, ut diximus, fortissimae erant, certain nations of Gaul, as we said, were very brave.*

a. Observe that the clauses introduced by *quā* and *ut* are adverbial in nature, and that their verbs are in the indicative. *Quā* and *ut*, so used, are adverbs.

498.

VOCABULARY

<i>condiciō, condiciōnis, f., terms, condition (condition)</i>	<i>cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, gather together, force, compel (with acc. and infin., or a substantive clause of purpose) (cogent)</i>
<i>lātitūdō, lātitūdinis, f., breadth, width (latitude)</i>	<i>ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, go out, go forth (egress)</i>
<i>lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, f., mission, embassy (legation)</i>	<i>pateō, patēre, patui, —, lie open, extend, spread (patent)</i>
<i>numerus, -ī, m., number (numerical)</i>	

EXERCISES

499. 1. Inopia commeātūs hostēs ēgredi coēgit. 2. Quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per montēs erat, cum legiōnibus ire contendit. 3. Quod maiōrēs manūs hostium coāctae sunt, ducem nōn perturbāvit. 4. Una rēs Caesarem impedivit, quod lātitūdinem flūminis nōn cognōverat. 5. Eōrum agrī in lātitūdinem centum et sex mīlia passuum patēbant. 6. Quod Galli vīcōs nostrōs vāstābant, Caesari persuāsit ut pīncipēs eōrum in conloquium convocāret. 7. In Italiam contendit ut magnum numerum equitum et peditum cōgeret. 8. Quod condiciōnēs pācis petunt, nūntiandum est. 9. Omnia paranda sunt ad ēgrediendum. 10. Ad cognōscendās condiciōnēs dēditiōnis, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, lēgatiōnēs ab proximīs nātiōnibus missae erant.

500. 1. Bands of horsemen must be gathered together. 2. The fact that a great number of men are now going forth from the villages to make war disturbs us. 3. In the conference he said that the terms of surrender would be pleasing to him. 4. A great number of scouts went forth from the camp where the width of the river was least. 5. Do you know how many miles the lake extends? 6. The fact that the enemy were greatly confused was of help to us in attacking the town.



ROMAN LAMPS

LESSON LXXV

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS

501. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statements.

1. **Dicunt Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolant, ex finibus ēgredī,** they say that the Germans, who live across the Rhine, are going forth from their territories.
 2. **Dixērunt Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolerent, ex finibus ēgredi,** they said that the Germans, who lived across the Rhine, were going forth from their territories.
- a. Observe that in each sentence there is an indirect statement containing a subordinate clause. The direct statement of both sentences is the same, **Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex finibus ēgrediuntur.** Observe that the subordinate verbs are in the subjunctive in an indirect statement, and that the tense is changed according to the rule for the sequence of tenses (348-351).

502. Rule for Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statements. The verbs of the subordinate clauses of an indirect statement are in the subjunctive. The tense of the subjunctive is decided by the rule for the sequence of tenses after the verb of saying, knowing, etc.

- a. Subordinate verbs that were in the subjunctive before they were indirectly quoted of course remain in the subjunctive.

503.

VOCABULARY

barbarus, -ī, m., barbarian (*bar-barous*)

celeriter, adv., swiftly (*celerity*)

initium, ini'tī, n., beginning (*initial*)

satis, adv. and n. noun, enough, sufficiently (*satisfy*)

cōsuēscō, cōsuēscere, cōsuēvī, cōsuētus, become accustomed

moror, morārī, morātus sum, hinder, delay (*moratorium*)

revertō, revertere, revertī, reversus (or, in the present system, revertor, deponent), turn back, return (*revert*)

EXERCISES

504. 1. Caesar pollicētur sē celeriter reversūrum esse quod barbarī initium bellī faciant. 2. Caesar pollicitus est sē celeriter reversūrum esse quod barbarī initium bellī facerent. 3. Explōrātōrēs nūntiāvērunt hostēs vīcōs quōs oppugnāvissent nōn cēpissem. 4. Per captīvōs cognōscit hostēs, quod agri et vīci omnēs vāstātī sint, nūllum frūmentum habēre. 5. Putō cōnsilia quae mihi dare cōnsuēveris bona fuisse. 6. Aliquis dīcit dolōrem hostiū tantum esse ut in castrīs Rōmānīs audiātur. 7. Barbarī putāvērunt Cæsarem, qui in Galliam citeriōrem quōque annō revertī cōsuēvisset, diūtius nōn morātūrum esse. 8. Habēsne satis nāvium ad nāvigandum?

505. 1. They say that the legions which are spending the winter across the river will return. 2. A scout announced that Labienus, who had captured the town, was awaiting the coming of Cæsar. 3. I think that the enemy will go forth from our territories because they have not enough food. 4. We know that many nations which contended with the Romans have been conquered. 5. The barbarians, when they had delayed three days in front of the camp, sent an embassy to our general.



ROMAN PITCHERS

TENTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS LXIX-LXXV

506. Give the English meanings of the following words :

altitūdō	conveniō	hortor	pācō	rēs frūmentāria
augeō	cum	incendō	pateō	revertō
barbarus	ēgredior	incipiō	paulō	satis
castellum	exeō	initium	pellō	sequor
celeriter	existimō	lātitūdō	perficiō	signum
certus	exerior	lēgātiō	permittō	temperō
cōgō	facultās	libertās	pertineō	trānseō
condiciō	ferō	mōrō	polliceor	vadum
cōnor	fīō	mōrs	privātus	vel . . . vel
cōnsuēscō	fossa	nē . . . quidem	proficiscor	vereor
cōnsuētūdō	frūmentārius	numerus	prōgredior	vīs

507. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

test, make trial of	promise, offer	barbarian
allow, suffer, give up	terms, condition	not even
come together, assemble	urge, entreat	try, attempt
enough, sufficiently	either . . . or	death
accomplish, finish	ditch, trench	sign, signal
bear, bring ; report, say	go across, cross	a little
mission, embassy	certain, sure	height
become accustomed	fort, redoubt	begin
turn back, return	breadth, width	follow
extend, pertain to	private, personal	swiftly
lie open, extend, spread	set out, march	number
control, refrain, abstain from	increase, enlarge	hinder, delay
power, opportunity	fear, respect	beginning
be made, be done, happen	burn, kindle, excite	ford, shoal
force, strength, power, might	go forward, advance	go out, go forth
gather together, force, compel	think, judge, consider	of grain
beat, drive, defeat	subdue, pacify	freedom
grain supply, provisions	when, while	custom

508. Decline each noun in 506. Conjugate each deponent verb throughout. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural. Give the infinitives and the participles of each verb. Conjugate **ferō** and **fiō** throughout.

509. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 506. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

510. Give the rule, if there is one, for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

1. Gerundive with **ad** and with **causā**
2. Passive periphrastic conjugation
3. Ablative of specification
4. Temporal clauses with **cum**
5. Substantive clauses of fact with **quod**
6. Adverbial clauses with the verb in the indicative
7. Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse

511. Give Latin words suggested by the following English words :

popular	magnanimous	petition	prefect	total
temporal	audible	posterity	depredation	fidelity
real	local	intellect	malefactor	itinerary
neutral	habitable	novelty	humility	science
vulnerable	lucid	extremity	longitude	premium
ultimate	subterranean	solitude	identity	fortitude
post mortem	numerous	exhortation	altitude	egress
versatile	cognizant	tenant	deity	ignite
subsidiary	innocent	instruction	factory	satisfy
nocturnal	permanent	magnitude	postulate	assimilate
impetuous	alternate	gladiator	contention	minimize
final	urban	avocation	mission	nullify
insular	cogent	multitude	position	intervene
military	marine	pedestrian	audacity	contradict
hostile	naval	constitution	vicinity	expatriate

SUMMARY

THE USES OF NOUNS AND VERBS

512. From your study of the book to this point you are supposed to be familiar with the uses of nouns and verbs summarized below.

USES OF NOUNS

Nominative

Subject, 27, 28

Predicate noun, 86, 87

Genitive

Possessive, 43, 44

Material, p. 79, note 1

Partitive, 308, 309

Objective, 380, 381

Dative

Indirect object, 56, 57

With adjectives, 110, 111

With compound verbs, 424, 425

Purpose, 426, 427

Reference, 426, 428

With special verbs, 432, 433

Accusative

Direct object, 32, 33

Place to which, 179, 180, 230

With prepositions, 193

Extent of time and space, 332,
333

Subject of infinitive, 399

Ablative

Place where, 58, 59

Means, 121, 122

Manner, 128, 129

Accompaniment, 142, 143

Place from which, 177, 178, 230

Cause, 184, 185

With prepositions, 194

Time, 218, 219

Agent, 242, 243

Separation, 281, 282

Degree of difference, 320, 321

Absolute, 452-455

Specification, 480, 481

513.

USES OF VERBS

Indicative

Main verb: Declaratory sentence

Main verb: Question

Subordinate verb: Causal clause with **quod**, 50, 51

Subordinate verb: Temporal clause with **cum**, 487, 488

Subordinate verb: Relative clause

Subordinate verb: Substantive clause of fact with **quod**, 495, 496

Subordinate verb: Adverbial clause with **quā** and **ut**, 497

Subjunctive

Purpose clause: Adverbial, 343, 344

Purpose clause: Substantive, 355, 356

Result clause: Adverbial, 357, 358

Indirect Question: Substantive, 372, 373

Temporal clause: with **cum**, 487, 488

Subordinate clause in indirect statements, 501, 502

Infinitive

Subject of another verb, 393

Complement of another verb, 394

Object of another verb, 398

Verb of an indirect statement, 401

Participle

As an adjective, 443

Ablative absolute, 452-455

Equivalent to a clause of time, concession, cause, condition, etc., 444, 445

Gerund

As a noun, 460

With **ad** or **causā** to show purpose, 461

Gerundive

With **ad** or **causā** to show purpose, 472

With forms of **sum** in the passive periphrastic conjugation, 473

Whenever in your translation of the subsequent Selections for Reading you meet a noun or a verb, at once ask yourself which of these uses the particular noun or verb has. Then translate accordingly.

SELECTIONS FOR READING

CÆSAR: THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE HELVETIANS (CONTINUED FROM 494)

The Helvetians are allowed to proceed through the land of the Sequani

514. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, vadīs Rhodani, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, trānsire cōnātī sunt, 'sed mūnitiōne et tēlīs repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via. His cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mīsērunt. Dumnorīx apud Sēquānōs plūrimum poterat¹ et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in mātrīmōnium dūxerat. Etiam cupiditāte rēgnī adductus est. Itaque Sēquānis persuāsit ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs īre permitterent et obsidēs inter sēsē darent: Sēquānī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibērent; Helvētiī, ut sine iniūriā trānsirent. 10

Cæsar opposes this plan of the Helvetians and crosses the Rhone

515. Caesar certior factus est Helvētiōs cōnstituisse per agrum Sēquānorūm et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, qui nōn longē ā Tolōsatium finibūs aberant, quae cīvitās erat in prōvinciā. Inimicōs populī Rōmānī eam regiōnem incolere nōlēbat. Ob eam causam ei mūnitiōnī quam 15 fēcerat Labiēnum lēgātūm praefēcit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus² contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscrīpsit; et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūxit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his quīnque legiōnibūs īre contendit. Ibi quaedam cīvitātēs, locīs 20

¹ plūrimum poterat, had a great deal of influence. ² magnīs itineribus, by long journeys. See p. 185, note 1.

superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum prohibere conatae sunt. Compluribus his proeliis victis,¹ ab Ocelo, quod est oppidum citerioris provinciae² extrimum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines,
5 ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos exercitum duxit. Hui sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

The Hædui and other tribes ask for Cæsar's help against the Helvetians

516. Helvetti interim per fines Sèquanorum suas copias duxerant, et in Haeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agrós vastabant. Haeduī sē suaque³ ab eis defendere nōn poterant.
10 Itaque legatos ad Caesarem misérunt ut auxilium rogarent. Ei dixerunt paene in conspectū exercitus nostri agrós vastari, liberós in servitutem abducī, oppida expugnari nōn dēbuisse.⁴ Eodem tempore Ambarri Caesarem certiorem fecerunt sese, vastatis agris, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere.
15 Item Allobrogēs, qui trans Rhodanum vicōs habebant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recēperunt. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar diutius nōn exspectandum esse⁵ constituit.

Cæsar destroys one division of the Helvetians

517. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Haeduorum et Sèquanorum in Rhodanum fluit. Id Helvetti transibant. Ubi per exploratōres Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs copiarum Helvettiōs id flumen tradūxisse, quartam fere partem citrā flumen Ararim relictam esse, dē tertia vigiliā cum legionibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit quae nōndum flumen transierat. Eōs impeditos adgressus magnam
25 partem interfecit; reliquī sese fugae mandavérunt atque in proximās silvas abdidērunt.

¹ Translate **compluribus** with **proeliis** and **his** with **victis**. ² The Roman province on the Italian side of the Alps. ³ *suaque, and their possessions.*
⁴ *vastari . . . nōn dēbuisse, ought not to have been etc.* ⁵ *nōn exspectandum esse, that he must not wait.* The verb, however, is used impersonally.

The Helvetians send an embassy to Cæsar

518. Hoc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī¹ fēcit atque ita exercitum trādūxit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōti, cum illum ūnō diē flūmen trānsisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mīserunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō princeps fuit. In conloquiō Caesar im- 5 perāvit ut obsidēs populō Rōmānō darentur. Dīvicō respondit Helvētiōs obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuēuisse. Hoc respōnsō datō discessit..

Cæsar follows the Helvetians

519. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō mōvērunt. Idem fēcit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, 10 quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coēgerat, praemīsit, ut vidērent quās in partēs hostēs iter facerent. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen² secūti aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium commisērunt; et pauci dē nostrīs interfectī sunt. Quō proeliō dēlectāti Helvētiī, quod paucis 15 equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum vicerant, audācius in nostrōs impetum facere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, et ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum pīnum³ quīnque mīlia passuum interessent.

20

Cæsar prepares to attack the Helvetians

520. Tandem ab explōrātōribus certior factus est hostēs mīlia passuum ab ipsiū castrīs octō abesse. Dē tertiā vigiliā Labiēnum lēgātūm cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibūs qui iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iussit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs 25 contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mīsit. Cōnsidius cum explōrātōribus praemissus est.

¹ in Ararī, over the Arar. ² novissimum agmen, the rear. ³ pīnum (agmen), vanguard.

Considius becomes panic-stricken

521. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris mille passuum abesset, neque (ut posteā ex captīvis intellēxit) aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō¹ ad eum properāvit. Dixit mon-
5 tem quem Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluisse ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armīs cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās ad proximum collem dūxit et aciem īstrūxit. Labiēnus inter-
rim, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat. Mūltō diē² per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Hel-
10 vētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi nūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōsuēverat intervällō, hostēs secūtus est et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra posuit.

The battle between Cæsar and the Helvetians

522. Posterō diē cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem
15 dūxit equitātumque, ut sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō aciem legiōnum quattuor īstrūxit. In summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximā aestātē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia³ conlocāvit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carris secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum
20 contulērunt; ipsi sub primam nostram aciem successērunt. Cae-
sar hortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī hostēs ad montem, quī circiter mille passuum aberat, sē recipere coepērunt. Diū atque āriter pugnāvērunt. Diūtius
25 cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut cooperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī⁴ ad impedimenta et

¹ equō admissō, at full gallop. ² multō diē, late in the day. ³ auxilia, auxiliaries. ⁴ alterī . . . alterī, one body . . . the other.

carrōs suōs iērunt. Ad multam noctem¹ etiam ad impedimenta contendērunt, quod Helvētiī prō vällō carrōs conlocāverant et ē locō superiore in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant. Tandem nostrī impedimenta et castra cēpērunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est.

5

The Helvetians retreat and offer to surrender

523. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt. In finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt. Nostrī autem propter vulnera militum eōs sequī nōn potuērunt. Caesar litterās nūntiōsque ad Lingonēs misit et imperāvit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent. 10 Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convēniissent sēque ad pedēs² prōiēcissent pācemque petiſſent atque eōs in eō locō quō tum erant suum adventum exspectāre iussiſſet, pāruē- 15 runt. Eō cum Caesar pervēniſſet, obsidēs et arma postulāvit. Obsidibus armisque trāditīs, eōs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussiſſit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, 20 qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finib⁹ in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimi Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

¹ ad multam noctem, until late at night. ² ad pedēs, at his feet.



CARRI

CÆSAR: THE STORY OF THE ADUATUCI

The Aduatuci prepare to make a desperate resistance to Cæsar

524. Aduatuci¹ cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō² Nerviis veniebant. Hāc pugnā³ nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt; omnibus oppidīs castellīisque dēsertis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitūm contulērunt. Quod⁴ ex omnibus in circuitū partibus⁵ altissimās rūpēs habēbat, sed ūnā ex parte aditus relinquēbātur. Quem locum duplīcī altissimō mūrō mūnierant et magna saxa in mūrō conlocābant.

From their walls they taunt the Rōmans

525. Prīmō adventū exercitūs nostri⁶ crēbrās ēruptiōnēs faciēbant parvīsque proeliis cum nostrīs contendēbant. Posteā, 10 vällō crēbrīsque castellīs ā Rōmānis circummūnītī, oppidō⁷ sē continēbant. Ubi, vīneīs āctīs⁸ aggere exstrūctō, turrim⁹ procul cōnstituī vidērunt, prīmū inridēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcībus¹⁰ coepērunt, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō¹¹ īstruēbātur. Rogāvērunt quibus manibus aut quibus vīribus 15 tantulī¹² hominēs tantam turrim in mūrō¹³ conlocāre possent.

¹ The Aduatuci lived about the river Mosa (Meuse), in what is now Belgium.
² for an aid = to aid. What use of the case? ³ The reference is to a battle in which the Nervii had been almost annihilated. ⁴ this town. ⁵ ex . . . partibus, from all parts in a circuit = all around. ⁶ prīmō . . . nostri, as soon as our army got there. What literally? ⁷ oppidō = in oppidō. ⁸ vīneīs āctīs, the vineæ had been brought up. These vineæ were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were building an agger, undermining a wall, or filling up a ditch in front of fortifications. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers. ⁹ turrim = turrem. ¹⁰ increpitāre vōcībus, taunt. What literally? ¹¹ ab tantō spatiō, so far away. ¹² To the taller Belgians the Romans looked like "little chaps." ¹³ The Aduatuci, unacquainted with Roman siege operations, supposed the Romans intended to hoist the tower upon their wall.

But they lose confidence and offer to surrender

526. Ubi turrim movērī¹ et appropinquāre mūris vīdērunt, novā speciē commōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī² sunt: Aduatucōs nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine auxiliō deōrum bellum gerere, quod tantās māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte movēre possent; itaque sē suaque 5 omnia eōrum potestātī permīssūrōs esse. Īnum³ petēbant, nē Caesar sē armis privāret. Omnēs ferē fīnitimī erant inimicī, ā quibus sē dēfendere armis trāditīs nōn poterant. Mālēbant quamvis fortūnam⁴ ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab inimicīs interfici.

Cæsar says they must disarm, but promises them protection

527. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Magis cōnsuētūdine suā⁵ 10 quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem sē cōservātūrum esse; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi⁶ armis trāditīs; id quod in⁷ Nerviis fēcisset factūrum esse, et fīnitimīs imperātūrum esse nē iniūriam eis īferrent. Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur sē factūrōs esse dīxērunt. Armōrum tanta multi- 15 tūdō dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iacta est ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem⁸ acervi eōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter pars tertia, ut posteā cognōvit Caesar, cēlāta⁹ atquē in oppidō retenta est.

A brave dash for freedom, with a tragic ending

528.. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō 20 exire iussit. Oppidānī, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs¹⁰ praesidia dēductūrōs crēdiderant, tertiā vigiliā, quā facilis ad nostrās

¹ was moving. ² From loquor. ³ one thing, namely, nē . . . privāret.
⁴ quamvis fortūnam, any fate whatsoever. ⁵ according to his custom. ⁶ nisi
 is to be translated with the ablative absolute armis trāditīs, unless their arms
 were given up. ⁷ in the case of. ⁸ summam . . . altitūdinem, top. ⁹ Supply
 est. ¹⁰ nostrōs, our commanders.

mūnitionēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis subitō ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut Caesar ante imperāverat, ignibus¹ signō factō, ex proximīs castellīs eō nostrī properāvērunt. Āriter hostēs pugnābant in extrēmā spē salūtis² 5 iniquō locō contrā nostrōs, qui ex vallō turribusque tēla iaciēbant. Interfectis ad³ hominum mīlibus quattuor, reliquōs in oppidum nostrī reiēcērunt. Posterō diē, intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit.⁴ Ab eis qui ēmerant capitum⁵ numerus ad eum relātus est mīlīum 10 quīnquāgintā trium.⁶

STORIES OF HERCULES

The infant Hercules

529. Herculēs, Alcmēnae filius, oīlim in Graeciā habitābat. Hic dicitur omnium hominum validissimus fuisse. Sed Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum, Alcmēnam nōn amāvit et Herculem, qui adhūc īfāns erat, interficere voluit. Mīsit igitur duo serpentī sae- 15 vissimōs, qui mediā nocte in cubiculum Alcmēnae vēnērunt, ubi Herculēs cum frātre dormiēbat. Nōn tamen in cūnis sed in scūtō magnō dormiēbant. Serpentēs iam appropinquāverant et scūtum movēbant. Itaque puerī ē somnō excitāti sunt.

Īphiclēs, frāter Herculis, magnā vōce auxilium petiit; at 20 Herculēs ipse parvīs manibus serpentēs statim prehendit et colla eōrum magnā vī compressit. Hōc modō serpentēs ā puerō interficti sunt. Alcmēna autem, māter puerōrum, clāmōre auditō, marītum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accendit et

¹ by fires. ² in . . . salūtis, as their last chance of saving themselves. What literally? ³ about, an adverb. ⁴ sectiōnem . . . vēndidit, Cæsar sold the whole town (the people and their property) as booty. ⁵ souls. We say so many "head" of cattle. ⁶ relātus . . . trium, was reported to be 53,000. These 53,000 captives were probably driven to the Province or to Italy and sold in lots to suit purchasers, there to wear out their lives in bondage.

gladium rapuit ad auxilium ferendum ; tum ad puerōs properāvit, sed, ubi ad locum vēnit, rem mīram vīdit, Herculēs enim ridēbat et serpentēs interfectōs dēmōnstrābat.

Hercules studies music

530. Herculēs ā puerō (*from boyhood*) corpus diligenter exercēbat ; magnam partem diēi in palaestrā cōnsūmēbat ; dicit etiam arcum intendere et tēla conicere. His exercitatiōnibus vīrēs eius cōfirmātae sunt. In mūsicā ā Linō centaurō ērudiēbātur. Hi centauri equī erant, sed caput hominis habēbant. Huic artī nōn diligenter Herculēs studēbat. Hāc rē cognitā, Linus puerum reprehendēbat, quod nōn studiōsus erat. 10 Tum Herculēs, īrā commōtus, citharam subitō rapuit, et omnibus vīribus caput magistrī infēlicis percussit.¹ Ille ictū prōstrātus² est, et paulō post ē vītā excessit, neque quisquam posteā id officium suscipere voluit.

Hercules consults the oracle

531. Herculēs post paucōs annōs cōstituit ad ūrāculum 15 Delphicum ire, hoc enim ūrāculum erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis plūrimīs dōnis ūrnātum. Hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quaedam, Pȳthia, et cōsilium dabat iis qui ad ūrāculum veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō Apolline docēbātur et voluntātem dei hominibus ēnūntiābat. Her- 20 culēs igitur, qui Apollinem maximē colēbat, hūc vēnit. Pȳthia iussit eum ad urbem Tiryntha ire et Eurystheī rēgis omnia imperāta facere. His auditīs, "Herculēs ad illam urbem contendit, et Eurystheō rēgī sē in servitūtem trādidit. Duodecim annōs in servitūte Eurystheī tenēbātur, et duodecim labōrēs 25 quōs ille imperāverat cōfēcit, hōc enim ūnō modō tantum sce- lus³ expiāri potuit. Dē his labōribus plūrima ā poētīs scripta sunt. Multa tamen quae poētæ nārrant vix crēdibilia sunt.

¹ From *percutiō*. ² From *prōsternō*. ³ The murdering of his own children.

The golden apples of the Hesperides

532. Eurystheus labōrem ūndecimum Herculī imposuit graviōrem quam eōs quōs anteā imperāverat. Imperāvit enim ei ut aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperidum ferret. Hesperidēs autem nymphae erant quaedam pulcherrimae, quae in terrā longinquā 5 habitābant et quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Iūnōne commissa erant. Multi hominēs, aurī cupiditāte inducti, haec pōma auferre iam anteā cōnāti erant. Rēs tamen difficillima erat, nam hortus in quō pōma erant mūrō ingentī undique circumdatus est; prāterēā dracō quidam, qui centum capita habuit, portam horti 10 diligenter custōdiēbat. Opus igitur quod Eurystheus Herculī imperāverat erat difficillimum, nōn sōlum ob causās quās memorāvimus, sed etiam quod Herculēs omnīnō ignōrābat quō in locō hortus situs esset.

Atlas, who upheld the heavens

533. Herculēs quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, sed cōnstituit 15 Eurystheō pārēre; et, cum iussa eius accēpisset, proficisci mātūrāvit. Ā multīs mercātōribus quaesīvit quō in locō Hesperidēs habitārent; nihil tamen certum reperiēre potuit. Frūstrā per multās terrās iter fēcit et multa pericula subiit. Tandem, cum in his itineribus tōtum annum cōnsūmpsisset, ad extrēmām 20 partem orbis, quae proxima erat Océanō, pervēnit. Hic stābat vir quidam, nōmine Atlās, qui caelum umerīs sustinēbat, nē in terram dēcideret. Herculēs, tantum labōrem magnopere mirātus, paulō post in conloquium cum Atlante vēnit, et, cum causam itineris docuissest, auxilium ab eō petiit.

Hercules takes the place of Atlas

25 534. Atlās autem potuit Herculem maximē iuvāre, ille enim erat pater Hesperidum et bene scīvit quō in locō esset hortus. Cum igitur audīvisset quam ob causam Herculēs vēnisset, dīxit

"Ipse ad hortum ibō, et filiābus¹ meis persuādēbō ut pōma suā sponte² trādant." Herculēs, cum haec audivisset, magnopere gāvisus est,³ nōluit enim vim adhibēre; cōnstituit igitur oblātūm⁴ auxilium accipere. Atlās tamen postulāvit ut, dum ipse abesset (*while he was himself away*), Herculēs caelum umeris sustinē- 5 ret. Hoc negōtium Herculēs libenter suscēpit et, quamquam rēs difficillima erat, tōtum pondus caelī continuōs complūris diēs sōlus sustinuit.

The return of Atlas

535. Atlās intereā abierat⁵ et ad hortum Hesperidum, quī pauca mīlia passuum aberat, sē quam celerrimē⁶ contulerat. 10 Eō cum vēnisset, causam veniendī exposuit et filiās vehementer hortātus est ut pōma trāderent. Illae diū haerēbant, nōlēbant enim hoc facere, quod ab ipsā Iūnōne, ut ante dictum est, hoc mūnus accēperant. Atlās tamen post multa verba eis persuāsit ut sibi⁷ pārērent, et pōma ad Herculem reftulit. Herculēs 15 intereā, cum plūris diēs exspectāvisset, neque ullam fāmam dēreditū Atlantis accēpisset, hāc morā graviter commōtus est. Tandem quīntō diē Atlantem redeuntem⁸ vīdit et mox magnō cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum, postquam grātiās prō tanto beneficiō ēgit, in Graeciam proficisci mātūrāvit. 20

Nessus, the Centaur

536. Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra perfēcit, quae nunc perscribere⁹ longum est.¹⁰ Tandem aetāte prōvectus¹¹

¹ The ending -ābus is regularly used for the dative and ablative plural of dea and of filia. ² suā sponte, *of their own accord*. ³ gāvisus est, from gaudeō, which is deponent in the perfect system. ⁴ From offerō. ⁵ From abeō. From what verb dōes aberat come? ⁶ quam celerrimē, *as quickly as possible*. Quam with a superlative usually has the force *as . . . as possible* (see p. 185, note 1). ⁷ sibi is an indirect reflexive here, and refers to the subject of persuāsit rather than to that of pārērent. ⁸ Present participle of redeō.

See 393. ¹⁰ longum est, *it would be tedious*. What is the subject of est?

¹¹ From prōvehō. How translated?

Dēianīram, Oeneī filiam, in mātrimōnium dūxit¹; post tamen trēs annōs puerum quendam, nōmine² Eunomum, cāsū interfēcit. Itaque cum uxōre ē finibus eius cīvitatis exire mātrāvit. Dum tamen iter faciunt, ad flūmen quoddam pervēnērunt, 5 quod nūllō ponte iūnctum erat, et, dum quaerunt quō modō flūmen trāicerent, accurrit centaurus quīdam, nōmine Nessus, quī auxilium viātōribus obtulit. Herculēs igitur uxōrem in tergum Nessi imposuit; tum ipse flūmen nandō³ trānsiit, quā flūmen angustissimum erat. At Nessus, paulum in aquam 10 prōgressus, ad rīpam subitō revertit et Dēianīram auferre cōnābātur. Quod cum animadvertisset⁴ Herculēs, irā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et pectus Nessī sagittā trānsfixit.

The poisoned robe

537. Nessus igitur sagittā Herculis trānsfixus humī (*on the ground*) iacēbat; at, nē occāsiōnem sui ulciscendi dimitteret, 15 ita locūtus est: "Si vīs amōrem marītī tui cōservāre, aliquid huius sanguinis, quī ē pectore meō effunditur, sūmēs et repōnēs, Tum sī quandō suspīciō in mentem tuam vēnerit,⁵ vestem marītī hōc sanguine inficiēs." Haec locūtus, Nessus animam efflāvit; Dēianīra autem, nihil mali⁶ suspicāta, imperāta fēcit. 20 Post breve tempus Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum, rēgem propinquum, suscēpit et, cum rēgem ipsum cum filiis interfēcisset, Iolēn, filiam Eurytī, captivam redūxit. Antequam tamer domum vēnit, nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmunturium appulit et, in terram ēgressus, āram cōstituit, ut Iovī sacrificāret. Dum 25 tamen sacrificium parat, Licham, comitem suum, domum mīssi

¹ in mātrimōnium dūxit, married: How literally? ² See 481. ³ From nō; by swimming; see 460. ⁴ quod cum animadvertisset, when he had noticed this; refers to the whole preceding sentence. Quod referring to a preceding sentence is commonly translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun ⁵ vēnerit, shall have come; but it is better translated comes. ⁶ Partitive genitive with nihil; nothing of evil = no evil.

ut yestem albam referret; mōs enim erat apud antiquōs vestem albam gerere¹ cum sacrificiā facerent. At Dēianira, verita² Iolēn, vestem, priusquam Lichae dedit, sanguine Nessī infēcit.

The death of Hercules

538. Herculēs, nihil malī suspicātus, vestem quam Lichās attulit statim induit; post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per omnia membra sēnsit, et quae causa eius reī esset magnopere mīrābātur. Dolōre paene exanimātus vestem dētrahere cōnātus est; illa tamen in corpore haesit neque ullō modō divelli potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs, quasi furōre impulsus, in montem Oetam sē contulit et in rogum, quem summā celeritāte extrūxerat, sē imposuit. Quod cum fēcisset, eōs qui circumstābant orāvit ut rogum quam celerrimē accenderent. Omnes diū recūsābant; tandem tamen pāstor quīdam, ad misericordiam inductus, ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō obscūrantur, Herculēs dēnsā nūbe vēlātus ā Iove in Olympum abreptus est.¹⁵

STORIES OF ULYSSES

Polyphemus, the one-eyed giant

539. Ulixēs comitēsque, postquam tōtam noctem rēmis conterant; ad terram ignōtam nāvem appulērunt; tum, quod nātūram eius regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs, cum duodecim ē sociis in terram ēgressus, locum explōrāre cōstituit. Paulum ā litorē prōgressi, ad antrum ingēns pervēnērunt, quod habitāri 20 sēnsērunt, eius enim introitum arte et manibus³ mūnitum esse animadvertērunt. Mox, etsi intellegēbant sē nōn sine periculō id factūrōs esse, antrum intrāvērunt. Quod cum fēcissent,

¹ gerere, to wear; subject of erat. ² verita, fearing; the perfect participle of some deponent verbs is often translated like a present participle. ³ arte et manibus, by skill and hands = by skillful hands.

magnam cōpiam lactis invēnērunt in vāsīs ingentibus conditam. Dum tamen mirantur quis eam sēdem incoleret, sonitum terriblem audivērunt, et oculis ad portam versīs, mōnstrum horribile vidērunt, quod hūmānam speciem et figūram sed corpus 5 ingēns habuit. Cum autem animadvertisserint gigantem ūnum tantum¹ oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē quibus fāmam iam accēperant.

The giant's supper

540. Cyclōpēs autem pāstōrēs erant quidam, qui īsulam Siciliam et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolēbant; ibi enim 10 Vulcānus, praeses fabrōrum et ignis repertor, cuius servī Cyclōpēs erant, officinam habēbat. Graeci igitur, simul ac mōnstrum vidērunt, terrōre paene exanimāti, in interiōrem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē ibi cēlāre cōnābantur. Polyphēmus autem (ita enim gigās appellātus est) pecora sua in spēluncam 15 ēgit; tum, cum saxō ingenti portam obstrūxisset, ignem mediō in antrō accendit. Hōc factō, omnia oculō perlūstrābat, et cum sēnsisset hominēs in interiōre parte antri cēlāri, magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Qui estis hominēs? Mercātōrēs an latrōnēs?" Tum Ulixēs respondit sē neque mercātōrēs esse neque 20 praedandi causā vēnisse, sed ā Trōiā redeuntēs,² vī tempestātum ā rēctō cursū dēpulsōs esse; ḍrāvit etiam ut sē sine iniūriā dimitteret. Tum Polyphēmus quaesivit ubi nāvis eōrum esset. Ulixēs autem respondit nāvem in rūpēs coniectam et omnīnc perfrāctam³ esse. Polyphēmus, nūllō respōnsō datō, duo ē 25 sociīs manū corripuit et membrīs eōrum dīvulsīs⁴ carnem dēvorāre coepit.

¹ *tantum*, *only*. ² Modifies *sē* understood from the preceding clause *that they, while returning*. ³ From *perfringō*. ⁴ From *dīvellō*. ⁵ From *carō*

No way of escape

541. Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē vōcem quidem ēdere possent, sed, omnī spē salūtis dēpositā, mortem praeſentem exſpectārent. At Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribili cēnā dēpulsa est, humī (*on the ground*) prōstrātus somnō sē dedit. Quod cum 5 vidisset Ulixēs, arbitrātus est mōnstrum interficiendum esse. Primum cōnstituit explōrāre quā ratiōne ex antrō ēvādere possent. At, cum saxum animadvertisset quō introitus obstrūctus erat, intellēxit mortem Polyphēmī auxiliō sibi nōn futūram esse. Tanta enim erat eius saxī magnitūdō ut nē ā decem 10 quidem hominibus āmovēri posset. Ulixēs igitur hōc cōnātū dēstitit et ad sociōs rediit; qui, cum intellēxissent quō in locō¹ rēs esset, nūllā spē salūtis oblātā, dē fortūnī suis dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen vehementer hortātus est nē animōs dēmitterent,² et dēmōnstrāvit sē ipsōs iam anteā ē multis et 15 magnis periculis ēvāsisse.

A plan for vengeance

542. Ortā lūce³ Polyphēmus, iam ē somnō excitātus, idem quod⁴ hesternō diē fēcit, correptīs enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs carnem eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum āmōvisset, ipse cum pecore ex antrō prōgressus est. Quod cum 20 vidērent Graeci, magnam in spēm vēnērunt⁵ sē post paulum ēvāsūrōs. Mox tamen ab hāc spē repulsī sunt, nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt, saxum in locum restituit. Graeci, omnī spē salūtis dēpositā, lāmentis lacrimīsque sē dēdidērunt. Ulixēs vērō, qui, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, vir 25

¹ locō, state, condition, not place. ² nē . . . dēmitterent, not to lose heart.

³ ortā lūce = primā lūce, at daybreak; ortā is from orior. ⁴ idem quod, the same as. ⁵ magnam . . . vēnērunt, had great hopes.

fortis fuit, etsī bene intellegēbat rem in discriminē esse, nōn dum omnīnō dēspērābat. Tandem, postquam diū tōtō animō cōgitāvit, hoc cēpit cōnsilium. Ē lignīs quae iñ antrō repositā sunt pālum magnum dēlēgit; hunc summā cum diligentiā 5 praeacūtum fēcit; tum, postquam sociīs quid¹ fieri vellet ostendit, redditum Polyphēmī exspectābat.

Polyphemus thrice drains a wine bowl

543. Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad antrum rediit et eōdem modō quō anteā cēnāvit. Tum Ulixēs ūtrem vīnī prōmpsīt,² quem forte, ut in tālibus rēbus saepe accidit, sēcum attūlerat, et postquam magnam crātēram vīnō replēvit, gigantem ad bibendum prōvocāvit. Polyphēmus, qui numquam anteā vīnum gustāverat, tōtam crātēram statim hausit.³ Quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem percēpit ut iterum et tertium crātēram replēri iubēret. Tum, cum quaesivisset quō nōmine 15 Ulixēs appellārētur, ille respondit sē Nēminem⁴ appellārī. Quod cum audivisset Polyphēmus, ita locūtus est: "Ut tibi grātiām prō tantō beneficiō referam, tē ultimum omnium dēvorābō." His dictis, cibō vīnōque gravātus recubuit⁵ et post breve tempus somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs, sociīs convocā-20 tīs, dīxit: "Habēmus quam petiimus facultātem.⁶ Tanta occāsiō nōn omittenda est."

Noman

544. Hāc orātiōne habitā, postquam extrēmum pālum⁷ ignī calefēcit, oculum Polyphēmi, dum dormit, flagrante lignō trānsfōdit. Quō factō, omnēs in dīversās spēluncae partīs sē abdi-25 dērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre, quod necesse fuit,⁸ ē somnō

¹ In what case is quid? ² From prōmō. ³ From hauriō. ⁴ *Noman*.

⁵ From recumbō. ⁶ quam . . . facultātem = facultātem quam petiimus.

⁷ extrēmum pālum = extrēmam partem pāli. ⁸ quod necesse fuit, which was necessary = necessarily; the reference is to what follows.

excitātus, clāmōrem terribilem sustulit,¹ et dum per spēluncam errat, Ulixī manum inicere cōnābātur. Hoc tamen, quod iam omnīnō caecus erat, nūllō modō efficere potuit. Intereā reliquī Cyclōpēs, clāmōre auditō, undique ad spēluncam convēnērunt, et apud introitum adstantēs, quid Polyphēmus ageret² quaesi- 5 vērunt et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter vulnerātum esse et magnō dolōre adfici. Cum tamen cēterī quaesivissent quis ei³ vim intulisset, respon- 10 dit ille Nēminem id fēcisse. Hōc auditō, Cyclōpēs, eum in insāniām incidiisse arbitrātī,⁴ abiērunt.

10

The escape

545. Sed Polyphēmus, cum sociōs suōs abiisse sēnsisset, furōre atque āmentiā impulsus, Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit. Tandem cum portam invēnissēt, saxum quō obstrūcta⁵ erat āmōvit, ut pecus ad agrōs exiret. Tum ipse in introitū sēdit, et cum quaeque ovis ad locum vēnerat, tergum eius manibus 15 tractābat, nē viri inter ovēs exire possent. Quod cum animad- vertisset Ulixēs, hoc cōnsilium iniit, bene enim intellēxit omnem spem salūtis iam in dolō magis quam in virtūtē pōnī. Primum trēs quās vīdit pinguissimās ex ovibus dēlēgit. Quibus inter.sē⁶ vīminibus cōnexīs,⁷ ūnum ex sociīs ventribus eōrum ita subiēcit 20 ut omnīnō latēret; deinde ovis hominem sēcum ferentēs ad portam ēgit. Id accidit quod fore⁸ suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim, postquam manūs tergis eōrum imposuit, ovis praeterire passus⁹ est. Ulixēs, postquam rem fēliciter ēvēnisce vīdit, omnēs sociōs suōs ex ūrdine eōdem modō ēmīsit; quō factō, ipse 25 ultimus ēvāsit.

¹ From tollō. ² quid . . . ageret, what Polyphemus was doing = what ailed Polyphemus. ³ Which usage of the dative? ⁴ Translate as if it were a present participle. See p. 213, note 2. ⁵ The subject is porta. ⁶ inter sē, together. ⁷ From cōnectō. ⁸ fore = futūrum esse, would be, would happen. ⁹ From patior.

Out of danger

546. His rēbus ita cōfectis, Ulixēs cum sociis quam celerrimē ad lītus contendit. Quō¹ cum vēnissent, ab eis qui praeſidiō nāvī relictī erant magnā cum laetitiā acceptī sunt. Hī enim, cum iam anxiis animis trēs diēs redditum eōrum in 5 hōrās² exspectāvissent, eōs in periculum grave incidisse suspicātī, ipsī auxiliandi causā ēgredi parābant. Tum Ulixēs, nōn satis tūtum esse arbitrātus in eō locō manēre, quam celerrimē proficisci cōnstituit. Iussit igitur omnēs nāvem cōnscendere, et, ancoris sublātis, paulum ā lītore in altum p̄ōvectus est. Tum 10 magnā vōce exclāmāvit: “Tū, Polyphēme,³ quī iūra hospiti spērnis, iūstam et dēbitam poenam immānitātis tuae solvistī.” Hāc vōce auditā, Polyphēmus, irā vehementer commōtus, ad mare sē contulit, et ubi intellēxit nāvem paulum ā lītore remōtam esse, saxum ingēns correptum in eam partem coniēcit unde 15 vōcem venīre sēnsit. Graeci autem, nūllō damnō acceptō, cursum tenuērunt.

EUTROPIUS: HISTORY OF ROME⁴*The founding of Rome by Romulus*

547. Rōmānum imperium⁵ ā Rōmulō initium habet, qui Rhēae Silviae filius et Mārtis erat. Is decem et octō annōs nātus urbem parvam in Palātinō monte⁶ cōnstituit. Condītā 20 cīvitātē, quam ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec ferē ēgit.⁷ Multitūdinem fīnitimōrum in cīvitātem recēpit, centum ex seniōribus⁸ lēgit, quōrum cōnsiliō omnia agēbat, quōs senātōrēs

¹ quō, *thither*; begin to translate with *cum*. ² in hōrās, *hourly*. ³ Vocative case, denoting the person addressed. ⁴ Eutropius, a Roman historian of the fourth century of our era, wrote a brief history of Rome from its founding to the year 364. ⁵ imperium, *power, state*. ⁶ Palātinō monte, *the Palatine Hill*, one of the seven hills on which Rome was built. ⁷ haec ferē ēgit, *he did about as follows*. ⁸ seniōribus, *older men*; comparative of senex, *old*.

nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Tum, cum uxōrēs ipse et populus suus nōn habērent,¹ invitāvit ad spectāculum lūdōrum vicīnās urbi Rōmae nātiōnēs atque eārum virginēs rapuit. Commōtis bellis propter raptārum² iniūriam Caenīnēnsēs vicit, Antemnātēs, Crustumīnōs, Sabinōs,³ Fidēnātēs, Vēientēs. Haec 5 omnia oppida urbem cingunt. Et cum, ortā subitō tempestāte, nōn compāruisset,⁴ annō rēgnī trīcēsimō septimō ad deōs trānsisse crēdītus est et cōnsecrātus.⁵

The kings who succeeded Romulus

548. Posteā Numa Pompilius rēx creātus est, quī bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitātī⁶ quam Rōmulus 10 prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs Rōmānīs mōrēsque cōnstituit et annum dēscripsit in decem mēnsēs, et īfīnīta sacra ac templa cōnstituit.

Huic successit Tullus Hostilius. Hic bella reparāvit, Albānōs vicit; Vēientēs et Fidēnātēs bellō superāvit; urbem ampliāvit adiectō Caeliō monte.⁷

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius suscēpit imperium. Contrā Latinōs dīmīcāvit, Aventīnum montem cīvitātī adiēcit et Iāniculum; apud ōstium Tiberis cīvitātem condidit.

Deinde rēgnū Prīscus Tarquinius accēpit. Hic numerum senātōrum duplīcāvit, circum⁸ Rōmae⁹ aedificāvit, lūdōs Rōmā- 20 nōs¹⁰ instituit, quī ad nostrām memoriam permanent. Vicit idem etiam Sabinōs et nōn parum¹¹ agrōrum urbis Rōmae territōriō iūnxit, pīmusque triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Mūrōs fēcit et cloācās, Capitōlium incohāvit.

¹ cum . . . habērent, because . . . had. A causal clause introduced by cum, because, as, since, has its verb in the subjunctive mood. ² Understand virginū.

³ In apposition with Caenīnēnsēs, Antemnātēs, and Crustumīnōs. Fidenæ and Veii were Etruscan towns. ⁴ nōn compāruisset, had disappeared. ⁵ cōnsecrātus (est), was deified. ⁶ Which use of the dative? ⁷ adiectō Caeliō monte, by the addition of the Cælian Hill. ⁸ circum, the Circus Maximus, where races and other sports were held. ⁹ Rōmae, at Rome. ¹⁰ The lūdī Rōmānī consisted of a variety of games and contests held each year in September in the Circus Maximus. ¹¹ nōn parum, not a little; parum is here used as a noun.

Post hunc Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium. Hic quoque Sabīnōs subēgit, montēs trēs, Quirinālem, Viminālem, Ēsquilinum, urbī adiūnxit, fossās circum mūrum dūxit. Prīmus omnium cēnum ōrdināvit, qui adhūc per orbem terrārum 5 incognitus erat. Sub eō Rōma, omnibus in cēnum dēlātis,¹ habuit capita² LXXXIII mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum his qui in agrīs erant.

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus atque ultimus rēgum, Volscōs, quae gēns ad Campāniā euntibus³ nōn longē ab urbe 10 est, vīcit, Gabiōs cīvitātem⁴ et Suessam Pōmētiā subēgit, cum Tuscīs pācem fēcit et templum Iovī in Capitōliō⁵ aedificāvit. Posteā Ardeam oppugnāns imperium perdidit⁶; cumque imperāvisset annōs quattuor et vīgintī, cum uxōre et liberī suis fūgit.

The first consuls

15 549. Hinc cōsulēs coepērunt, prō ūnō rēge duo, hāc causā creātī, ut, sī ūnus malus esse voluisset,⁷ alter eum habēns potestātem similem coērcēret. Et placuit⁸ nē imperium longius quam annum habērent, nē per diūturnitātem potestātis īsolen-tiōrēs redderentur. Fuērunt igitur annō pīmō ab expulsis 20 rēgibus cōsulēs Iūnius Brūtus et Tarquinius Collātinus. Sed Tarquiniō Collātinō statim sublāta est dignitās. Placuerat⁹ enim nē quisquam in urbe manēret qui Tarquinius vocārētur. Ergō, acceptō omnī patrimōniō suō, ex urbe migrāvit, et locō ipsius¹⁰ factus est L. Valerius Pūblicola cōsul.

¹ omnibus . . . dēlātis, when all had been enumerated. ² See p. 208, note 5.

³ ad Campāniā euntibus, to those going toward Campania, in the direction of Campania; euntibus is a dative of reference. ⁴ Gabiōs cīvitātem, the city (or community) of Gabii.

⁵ in Capitōliō, on the Capitoline Hill. ⁶ A crime committed by a son of Tarquinius aroused such indignation that Tarquinius and his family were obliged to leave Rome. ⁷ sī . . . voluisset, if one of the consuls were inclined to be troublesome; voluisset is attracted into the subjunctive mood, because it depends on a clause the verb of which is in the subjunctive. ⁸ placuit, it was decided. The subject is the clause nē . . . habērent.

⁹ placuerat, it had been decided. ¹⁰ locō ipsius, in his place.

Wars against the Tarquins

550. Commōvit tamen bellum urbī Rōmae rēx Tarquinius, quī fuerat expulsus, et, collēctis multis gentibus, ut in rēgnū posset restituī, dīmicāvit. In prīmā pugnā Brūtus cōnsul et Arrūns, Tarquinī filius, invicem sē occidērunt,¹ Rōmānī tamen ex eā pugnā victōrēs recessērunt. Brūtum mātrōnae Rōmānae 5 quasi commūnem patrem per annum lūxērunt.²

Secundō quoque annō iterum Tarquinius, ut reciperetur in rēgnū, bellum Rōmānīs³ intulit, auxilium⁴ ei ferente Porsenā,⁵ Tusciae rēge, et Rōmam paene cēpit. Vērum tum quoque victus est. IO

Tertiō annō post rēgēs exāctōs Tarquinius, cum suscipi nōn posset in rēgnū neque ei Porsena, quī pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcerat, praestāret auxilium, Tusculum sē contulit, quae cīvitās nōn longē ab urbe est, atque ibi per quattuordecim annōs privātus incoluit. 15

Pyrrhus and the Romans

551. Eōdem tempore Tarentinīs, quī iam in ultimā Italiā sunt, bellum indictum est, quod lēgātīs Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcerant. Hī Pyrrhum, Ēpīrī rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs in auxilium poposcērunt.⁶ Is mox ad Italiam vēnit, tumque prīmū Rōmānī cum trānsmarīnō hoste dīmicāvērunt. Missus est contrā eum cōnsul P. Valerius Laevīnus, quī cum explorātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, iussit eōs per castra dūcī, ostendī omnem exercitum, tumque dīmittī, ut renūntiārent Pyrrhō quae ā Rōmānīs agerentur. Commissā mox pugnā, cum iam Pyrrhus fugeret, elephantōrum auxiliō vīcit, quōs incognitōs⁷ Rōmānī 25 timuērunt. Sed nox proeliō finem dedit; Laevīnus tamen per noctem fūgit, Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mille octingentōs cēpit et eōs

¹ invicem sē occidērunt, killed each other. ² From lūgeō. ³ Which usage of the dative? ⁴ auxilium, object of ferente. ⁵ ferente Porsenā, ablative absolute. ⁶ From poscō. ⁷ Translate so as to show cause.

summō honōre trāctāvit, occīsōs sepelivit. Quōs cum adversō vulnere¹ et truci vultū¹ etiam mortuōs iacēre vīdisset, tulisse ad caelum manūs dicitur cum hāc vōce: Sē tōtius orbis domīnum esse potuisse, sī tālēs sibi mīlitēs contigissent.²

5 Posteā Pyrrhus, coniūntīs sibi Samnitibus, Lūcānīs, Bruttiīs, Rōmam perrēxit,³ omnia ferrō ignīque vāstāvit, Campāniam populātus est, et ad Praeneste vēnit. Mox terrōre exercitus, quī eum cum cōnsule sequēbātur, in Campāniam sē recēpit. Lēgātī ad Pyrrhum dē redimendīs captivīs missī ab eō bene 10 recepti sunt. Captivōs sine pretiō Rōmam mīsit. Ūnum ex lēgātīs Rōmānōrum, Fabricium, sīc admirātus, cum eum pauperem esse cognōvisset, ut quārtā parte rēgnī prōmissā⁴ sollicitāre voluerit⁵ ut ad sē trānsiret, contemptusque⁶ est ā Fabriciō. Quārē cum Pyrrhus Rōmānōrum ingenti admirātiōne tenērētur,⁷ lēgātūm mīsit, ut pācem aequīs condicōnibus peteret, praecipuum virum, Cineam nōmine, ita ut Pyrrhus partem Italiae quam iam armīs occupāverat obtinēret.

• Pāx displicuit remandātūmque Pyrrhō est⁸ ā senātū eum cum Rōmānīs, nisi ex Italiā recessisset, pācem habēre nōn posse. 20 Ita lēgātus Pyrrhī reversus est. Ā quō cum quaereret Pyrrhus quālem Rōmam⁹ comperisset, Cineās dīxit rēgum sē patriam vīdisse: tālēs illīc ferē omnēs esse, quālis ūnius Pyrrhus apud Epīrum¹⁰ et reliquā Graeciam putārētur.

Missī sunt contrā Pyrrhum ducēs P. Sulpicius et Decius 25 Mūs cōsulēs. Certāmine commissō Pyrrhus vulnerātus est,

¹ adversō vulnere and truci vultū are descriptive ablatives. Translate, *when he saw these men lying with wounds on the front of their bodies and with stern expressions on their faces even in death.* ² if it had been his lot to have such soldiers. ³ From *pergō*. ⁴ quārtā . . . prōmissā, by the offer of a fourth of his kingdom. ⁵ The perfect subjunctive is often used in result clauses in secondary sequence. ⁶ From *contemnō*. ⁷ cum . . . tenērētur, since Pyrrhus felt great admiration for the Romans. How literally? The clause is causal. ⁸ remandātūm . . . est, word was sent back to Pyrrhus that, etc. ⁹ quālem Rōmam, what sort of city he had found Rome to be. ¹⁰ apud Epīrum, in Epirus.

elephantī interfectī, vīgintī milia caesa¹ hostium, et ex Rōmānīs tantum quīnque milia; Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus.²

Interiectō annō contrā Pyrrhum Fabricius est missus, qui prius inter lēgātōs sollicitārī nōn poterat; quārtā rēgnī parte prōmissā. Tum, cum vīcina castra ipse et rēx habērent, medicus Pyrrhī nocte ad eum vēnit, prōmittēns venēnō sē Pyrrhum occisūrum, sī sibi aliquid pollicērētur.³ Quem Fabricius vīncut redūci iussit ad dominum Pyrrhōque dīcī quae contrā caput eius medicus spopondisset.⁴ Tum rēx admirātus eum dixisse fertur⁵: “Ille est Fabricius qui difficilius ab honestātē quam 10 sōl ā cursū suō āvertī potest.” Tum rēx in Siciliam profectus est.

Cōsulēs deinde M. Curius Dentātus et Cornēlius Lentulus adversus Pyrrhum missī sunt. Curius contrā eum pugnāvit, exercitum eius cecidit,⁶ ipsum Tarentum fugāvit, castra cēpit. 15 Eō diē caesa hostium vīgintī tria milia. Curius in cōsulātū triumphāvit. Prīmus Rōmam elephantōs quattuor dūxit. Pyrrhus etiam ā Tarentō mox recessit et apud Argōs, Graeciae cīvitātem, occīsus est.

STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY

The brave deed of Horatius Cocles

552. Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum, ad restituendōs Tarquiniōs 20 cum īfestō exercitū vēnit. Prīmō impetū Iāniculum cēpit. Nōn umquam aliās ante tantus terror Rōmānōs invāserat; ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrant; urbem ipsam saepiunt praesidiis. Alia pars urbis mūris,⁷ alia Tiberī obiectō⁸ tūta vidēbātur.⁹ Pōns Sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit. Únus vir autem erat, 25

¹ From caedō. ² Supply est. ³ sī . . . pollicērētur, if some reward were promised to him. ⁴ From spondeō. ⁵ fertur, is reported. ⁶ From caedō. ⁷ mūris, by reason of its walls. ⁸ Tiberī obiectō, by the interposed Tiber = by the Tiber's being between. ⁹ vidēbātur, seemed.

Horātius Cocles, illō cognōmine appellātus quod in aliō proeliō oculum āmiserat. Is, extrēmā pontis parte occupātā, aeiem hostium sōlus sustinuit. Intereā pōns ā tergō interrumpēbatur. Ipsa audācia obstupefēcit hostis; ponte rescissō,¹ armātus in 5 Tiberim dēsiluit et, multīs superincidentibus tēlīs, incolumnis ad suōs trānshāvit. Ob virtūtem Horātiō cīvitās grātiam solvit²: ei tantum agrī pūblicē datum est quantum³ ūnō diē circumarāre potuit. Statua quoque ei in Comitiō posita est.

The fortitude of Mucius

553. Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius senātum adiit 10 et veniam trānsfugiendi⁴ petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestāte, in castra Porsenae vēnit. Ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope rēgium tribūnal cōnstitit. Stīpendium tunc forte militib⁹ dabātur, et proximus rēgi erat scriba, qui similem vestem gerēbat. Mūcius, ignōrāns uter rēx esset, scribam prō 15 rēge occidit. Apprehēnsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus,⁵ dextram accēnsō⁶ ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit, *velut* manum pūniēns. Attonitus mīrāculō, rēx iuvenem āmovērī ab altāribus iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, dīxit trecentōs⁷ 20 sibi similis adversus eum coniūrāvisse. Quā rē ille territus, bellum acceptīs obsidibus dēpositus.

Clælia, the hostage, escapes

554. Porsena Cloeliam, virginem nōbilem, inter obsidēs accēperat. Castra Porsenae haud procul ab ripā Tiberis locāta erant. Cloelia, dēceptīs custōdibus, nocte castris ēgressa, equō quem fors dederat arreptō,⁸ Tiberim trāiēcit. Quod ubi rēgi 25 nūntiātum est, pīmō incēnsus irā, Rōmam lēgātōs misit ad

¹ From rescindō. ² grātiam solvit, showed its gratitude. ³ tantum . . . quantum, as much . . . as. ⁴ veniam trānsfugiendi, favor of deserting = permission to desert. ⁵ From pertrahō. ⁶ From accēndō; order: foculō accēnsō ad sacrificium. ⁷ trecentōs, three hundred; subject of coniūrāvisse. ⁸ equō . . . arreptō, seizing a horse; arreptō is from arripiō.

Cloeliam obsidem reposcendam. Rōmānī eam ex foedere restituērunt. Tum rēx virginis virtūtem admirātus¹ eam laudāvit ac partem obsidum ei datūrum esse sē dixit, permīsitque ut ipsa obsidēs legeret. Prōductis obsidibus, Cloelia virginēs puerōsque ēlēgit, quōrum aetātem iniūriae obnoxiam² sciēbat, et cum eis in patriam rediit. Rōmānī novam in fēminā virtūtem novō genere honōris, statuā equestri, dōnāvērunt. In summā³ Viā Sacrā⁴ est posita virgō īsidēns equō.

Caius Marcius Coriolanus

555. C. Mārcius captis Coriolīs,⁵ urbe Volscōrum, Coriolānus dictus est. Puer patre⁶ orbātus sub mātris tūtēlāadolēvit. Cum 10 prīma stīpendia facere coepisset⁷ adulēscēns, ē multis proeliis quibus interfuit numquam rediit nisi corōnā aliōve militārī praemiō dōnātus. In omnī vītae ratiōne nihil aliud sibi prōpōnēbat quam ut mātri placēret; cumque illa audiret filium⁸ laudārī aut corōnā dōnārī vidēret, tum dēmum fēlicem sē ipsa 15 putābat. Cōnsul factus gravī annōnā⁹ advectum¹⁰ ē Siciliā frūmentum magnō pretiō dandum populō cūrāvit, ut plēbs agrōs, nōn sēditiōnēs, coleret. Quā de causā damnātus ad Volscōs infestōs tunc Rōmānīs cōfūgit eōsque adversus Rōmānōs concitāvit. Imperātor ā Volscīs factus, castrīs ad quārtum ab urbe 20 lapidem¹¹ positīs, agrum Rōmānum est populātus.

Missī sunt Rōmā ad Coriolānum lēgātī dē pāce, sed atrōx respōnsum rettulērunt. Iterum deinde iidem missī nē in castra

¹ Translate as if it were a present participle. ² obnoxiam, liable to.

³ summā, highest part of. ⁴ Viā Sacrā, a street running through the Roman Forum up to the Capitol. ⁵ captis Coriolīs, because of the capture of Corioli.

⁶ Which usage of the ablative? ⁷ prīma . . . coepisset, had begun to earn first wages (as a soldier) = had begun his first military service. ⁸ Subject accusative of laudārī and dōnārī. ⁹ gravī annōnā, in a time of extreme scarcity.

¹⁰ Agrees with frūmentum, which is the subject accusative of dandum (esse). Translate, had (cūrāvit) corn, which had been brought from Sicily, distributed to the people at a high price. ¹¹ lapidem, milestone.

quidem recepti sunt. Stupēbat senātus, trepidābat populus, viri pariter ac mulierēs exitium imminēns lāmentābantur. Tum Veturia, Coriolānī māter, et Volumnia uxor, duōs parvōs filiōs sēcum trahēns, castra hostium petiērunt. Ubi mātrem adsperxit 5 Coriolānus, exclāmāvit: “Ō patria, vīcistī īram mēam admōtis mātris meae precibus,¹ cui² tuam in mē iniūriam condōnō.” Complexus inde suōs castra mōvit et exercitum ex agrō Rōmānō abdūxit.

¹ admōtis . . . precibus, by employing the prayers.

² cui, for whose sake.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

LESSON I

556. What use of the nominative do you know? What are the case endings of a noun, and what is their use? What are the personal endings of the third person singular and plural? Translate **puella ambulat** to show three kinds of action. What is the case ending in the nominative plural for words ending in -a in the nominative singular? What is an enclitic? To which word in a sentence is -ne generally attached? Accent **ambulant** and **ambulantne**. Divide **agricola** and **ambulant** into syllables, and give a reason for the accent of each word.

LESSON II

557. What are the case endings for the nominative and the accusative singular? for the same cases in the plural? What usage has the accusative? Give the accusative singular and plural of **agricola**. What is the difference in meaning between **agricola puellās convocat** and **puellās agricola convocat**? What Latin words are suggested by the English words *laudatory, aquarium, convocation, cantata, aéronaut?* Tell why each noun in 36 stands in the case in which it is found.

LESSON III

558. What is the use of the personal endings in the inflection of a verb? Give the personal endings of the present tense. What does each mean? Inflect **convocō** in the present indicative active. If a verb ends in -**mus**, what is its subject? If it ends in -**s**? Say in Latin *it swims* and *she walks*. Spell the present stem of each verb in 39, c. How many conjugations of Latin verbs are there? How are they distinguished from each other? Give the present infinitive active of each verb in 39, c.

LESSON IV

559. What three Latin cases have you learned? To which English case does each correspond? What is the usage of each case you have met? Inflect *fugō* in the present indicative active. Give the nominative, genitive, and accusative singular and plural of the Latin word for *daughter*. Express in Latin *whose land?* *whom does he see?* *what has he?* Give English words that appear to be derived from *liberō* and *portō*. Give the genitive and the accusative forms of the nouns in 45. Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 46.

LESSON V

560. Spell the present stem of the Latin verb meaning *see*. What endings do you add in the inflection of the present indicative active? Where is the vowel e of the present stem of the second conjugation short in the inflection of the present tense? Inflect *doceō*, *habeō*, *videō*, and *portō* in the present indicative active. What Latin words are suggested by the English words *fortune*, *expectation*, *piratical*, *export*, *monitor*? Why is the infinitive given with each verb in the vocabularies? What kind of clause is introduced by *quod*?

LESSON VI

561. How many cases of Latin nouns have you learned? Name them. Give a usage of each case, and give the rule for the usage. With which Latin case have you used a preposition? What is the general character of the dative and of the ablative case? Give the dative and the ablative singular and plural of each noun in 55. What do you observe about the endings of the dative and the ablative plural? Explain the normal order of words in a Latin sentence. What is the effect of a change from the normal order of words? Give English words that appear to be derived from *fābula*, *dō*, and *nārrō*. Conjugate each verb in 49 in the present indicative active. Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 61.

LESSON VII

562. How many declensions of Latin nouns are there? What nouns belong to the first declension? What is the base of a noun? Give in their order the case endings of the first declension. How do you recognize a noun of this declension? Decline **rēgīna**, **pīrāta**, and **domīna**. What is the gender of most nouns of the first declension? Give five masculine nouns of this declension. What three case endings in this declension are the same? Say in Latin *in the fight, in the forests*. Give English words that appear to be derived from the words in 65.

LESSON VIII

563. What is the case of the direct object in Latin? of the indirect object? for the *to* or *for* relation? for the *of* relation? How is the *in* or *on* relation expressed? What two genders are there in nouns of the second declension? What are the case endings of the second declension? Decline **domīnus** and **oppīdum**. Express in Latin *of the horses, in the garden, to the friends*. What cases are alike in the second declension? What four pairs of cases of neuter nouns in this declension are alike? What English words are suggested by **domīnus**? Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 75.

LESSON IX

564. Decline **bonūs**. Decline **pīlūm magnum**. What is the rule for the agreement of adjectives? What is the normal position of an adjective? of an indirect object? How many declensions of adjectives are there? What adjectives precede their nouns? Decline **nautā validūs**. Give the ablative singular and plural of each noun in 82. Give the case endings of an adjective of the first and second declensions, reciting first the nominative endings for the three genders, then the genitive endings, and so on. What English words are suggested by **magnus**? Conjugate in the present indicative active each verb in 83.

LESSON X

565. State the rule for the gender of nouns of the first declension. Is the ending of the adjective always the same as that of the noun with which it agrees? Why is **nauta bona** not correct? Express in Latin *you are a poet, your fortune is large, in Europe, to the kind goddess.* Decline **longus** and **puella parva**. Inflect **sum** and **dēmōnstrō** in the present indicative active. What kind of verb is **sum**? What are predicate nouns and adjectives? Give two uses of the nominative.

LESSON XII

566. What cases of the second declension end in -*ō*? What cases end in -*is*? What two cases in the neuter plural end in -*a*? Decline **puer, ager, vir, praemium, and socius.** How do the English derivatives of these words help you to decline them? Point out the predicate nouns and adjectives in 101. How is the present stem of a verb found? Give English words that appear to be derived from the nouns of 100. What is the rule for the gender of nouns of the second declension? Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 101.

LESSON XIII

567. Decline **miser** and **vester**. Inflect **superō** in the present indicative active. How does the meaning of **tuus** differ from that of **vester**? What is an appositive? Find examples of an appositive in 96 and in 101. What is the rule for the case of an appositive? What is the rule for the agreement of an adjective? Say in Latin *for my friend Galba.* What English words appear to be derived from **miser, multus, and vocō?** What kind of clause begins with **quod** in sentence 7 of 105?

LESSON XIV

568. Give two uses of the nominative and two of the dative, and one usage of each of the other cases. Give seven Latin adjectives that are accompanied by the dative. How do you say in

Latin *there is?* *there are?* Inflect **sum** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. Decline **servus, vir, filius**. What adjectives have you learned that keep **e** in their inflection? In what two ways have you used **amicus**? What is the rule for the dative with adjectives? Give English derivatives of **propinquus** and **proximus**.

LESSON XV

569. Decline **lēgātus** and **scūtum**. Inflect **pugnō** and **compleō** in the imperfect indicative active. Give two uses of the ablative. Which use requires a preposition? By what sort of prepositional phrases is the ablative of means to be translated? What is the tense sign of the imperfect indicative active? Divide **exspectābāmus** in such a way as to show the stem, the tense sign, and the personal ending. Which personal ending of the imperfect is unlike that of the present? Express in Latin *by an oar, with water, by means of money*. What kind of action is expressed by the imperfect?

LESSON XVI

570. Inflect **labōrō** and **teneō** in the future indicative active. Give three uses of the ablative, two of the dative, and one of the genitive. Which two cases are used with prepositions in Latin? Give two uses of the accusative. What preposition in Latin is used with two cases? What is the tense sign of the future indicative active? Translate **cum cūrā** in two ways. When may **cum** be omitted in phrases of manner? Say in Latin *with a sword* and *with zeal*. Give English derivatives of **labōrō**. Decline **aeger**.

LESSON XVII

571. What forms are given as the principal parts of a verb? Give the principal parts of **laudō**. What are the present and the perfect stem of **laudō**? What tenses use the present stem in their inflection (as far as you have studied the verb)? What are the personal endings of the perfect indicative active? What tenses use the perfect stem in their inflection? Inflect **laudō** in the perfect

indicative active. What is the difference between the perfect definite and the perfect indefinite? Translate the perfect of **laudō** in both ways. Tell the reason for the case of each noun and adjective in 138.

LESSON XVIII

572. Give four uses of the ablative. Which uses of the ablative take **cum**? Inflect **videō** in the perfect indicative active and **maneō** in the imperfect indicative active. Express in Latin *with the Romans, with danger, with a shield, in Italy, into Germany*. Decline **periculum** and **locus**. What are the perfect stems of the verbs in 139? Give English derivatives of **captīvus**, **causa**, and **locus**.

LESSON XIX

573. What is a demonstrative? Give an example in English. In what ways is the demonstrative **is** used? Inflect **sum**, **hiemō**, and **maneō** in the tenses of the indicative active through the perfect. Express in Latin *she has been kind, they have been friends*. Decline **is** and **proximus**. What is the normal position of a modifying adjective? What is the normal position of **is** when it is an adjective? Tell the reason for the case of each noun and adjective in 150.

LESSON XX

574. What is the difference in the action expressed by the imperfect and the perfect tense? What is the perfect stem of **sum**? Decline the interrogative pronoun **quis**. Decline the interrogative adjective **qui**. Express in Latin *whose horse? of those men, with that girl, with which spears?* Make a synopsis (671) of **sum** in each person for the tenses you have studied. Decline **animus** and **imperium**.

LESSON XXI

575. Give the infinitives of **amō**, **moneō**, and **regō**. What letter of the infinitive needs to be especially noticed? Why? What are the perfect stems of **amō**, **moneō**, and **mittō**? Translate the third person

singular of the perfect indicative active of **dūcō** in two ways. What is the tense sign of the future in the first and second conjugations? in the third? Inflect **mittō** in the indicative active through the perfect. Inflect **dūcō** and **emō** in the present and future indicative active. Give English derivatives of **dūcō** and **mittō**. Make a synopsis of **amō** in each person through the perfect indicative.

LESSON XXIII

576. What three things must you know about each noun of the third declension to be able to decline it? What are the case endings of this declension? What case endings are the same? Decline **eques**, **dux**, **lapis**, and **caput**. Decline **rēx noster**. Make a synopsis of **mittō** in each person for the tenses you have studied. Give English derivatives of the words in 172.

LESSON XXIV

577. What uses of the accusative and ablative cases have you now studied? What is the difference between phrases of place from which introduced by **ab**, **ex**, and **dē**? Give the rules for place from which and place to which. In what forms is the inflection of **capiō** unlike that of **regō**? Inflect **fugiō** in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active. Decline **mūrus** and **pēs**. Express in Latin *he fled toward the gate*, *he fled out of the gate*, *he fled away from the gate*. Give the genitive endings for the first three declensions; then the dative endings, and so on. From what Latin words are *pedal*, *mural*, and *dismiss* derived? Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 181.

LESSON XXV

578. Give five uses of the ablative case, and illustrate each with a Latin phrase. Decline **homō bonus**, **quod vulnus**, and **corpus**. What English words are used to translate the ablative of cause? What uses of the ablative require a preposition? In what two uses of the ablative is **cum** employed? Inflect **doleō** in the present, imperfect,

future, and perfect indicative active. In what two ways may the dative case be used? What two ways are there of expressing a phrase introduced by *to*? Make a synopsis of *capiō* in each person through the perfect indicative active.

LESSON XXVI

579. What are the regular case endings for nouns of the third declension of each gender? What nouns have i-stems? How do nouns with i-stems differ in declension from other nouns of the third declension? What is an enclitic? Give two examples. Decline *lapis*, *civis*, and *urbs*. Express in Latin *because of our courage*, *sons of these citizens*. From what Latin words are *civilize*, *finite*, *ignition*, *marine*, and *interurban* derived?

LESSON XXVII

580. What preposition is used with both the accusative and the ablative case? Decline *fīnis* and *mare*. Decline *aeger*. What two meanings has *inter*? How do you say *with* and *because of* in Latin? What forms of adjectives are used as nouns? Say in Latin *among the allies*, *after the war*, *across the sea*, *against the soldiers*, *toward the province*, *through the cities*, *without a friend*.

LESSON XXIX

581. Decline *audāx*, *brevis*, and *ācer*. Decline *omnēs Rōmāni*, *periculum commūne*, and *dux fortis*. What English words are derived from *gravis*, *omnis*, and *fortis*? What is the more common ending for the ablative singular of adjectives of the third declension? How can you tell from the vocabularies whether an adjective of the third declension has one, two, or three terminations? Express in Latin *for an eager man*, *with all the citizens*, *among the brave centurions*. Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 202.

LESSON XXX

582. How can you tell a verb of the fourth conjugation from a verb in -iō of the third conjugation? How do verbs of the fourth conjugation differ in inflection from verbs in -iō of the third conjugation?

Inflect *dēfendō* and *veniō* in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active, and make synopses of each. What are the present and perfect stems of the verbs in 213? Decline *flūmen* and *dux nōbilis*. What English words are derived from *paucī*, *nōbilis*, *audiō*, and *dēfendō*? What are the principal parts of *dūcō*, *mittō*, *capiō*, *fugiō*, and *iaciō*?

LESSON XXXI

583. Give eight uses of the ablative case, two of the dative, and two of the accusative. Inflect *gerō* in all the tenses you have studied. Decline *ea aestās*, *secundus annus*, *nox*, and *tempus breve*. Express in Latin *within ten hours*, *at that time*, *during the second summer*. What is the rule for the expression of time when in Latin? From what Latin words are *perennial*, *decimate*, *primitive*, *extemporaneous*, and *belligerent* derived?

LESSON XXXII

584. What auxiliary word must be used in translating the pluperfect? How are the pluperfect and future perfect tenses formed? Inflect *veniō*, *sum*, and *gerō* in these tenses. What is the Latin way of saying *the Roman people*? What is the perfect system of a verb? What is the difference in the meaning of *Gallus* and *Gallia*? What is the meaning of *fuerat*? of *habuerat*? Write a Latin sentence containing an ablative of cause, an ablative of accompaniment, and a pluperfect indicative active.

LESSON XXXIII

585. In what two ways may a demonstrative be used? Distinguish between *is*, *hic*, and *ille*. Decline these words. Give the complete rules for place from which and place to which. Express in Latin *from Italy*, *from Rome*, *to Gaul*, *to Athens*. Make a synopsis of *gerō* in the third person singular and plural of the indicative active. From the derivation of the words what is the difference between a *society* and a *fraternity*?

LESSON XXXV

586. What is the passive voice? What are the personal endings of the passive voice? In passive sentences how is the person doing the act expressed in Latin? How is the thing doing the act expressed? Inflect **superō** and **videō** in the present, imperfect, and future indicative passive, and make synopses of each. In how many ways have you used the ablative case? How many of these uses employ **ā** or **ab**? How many employ **cum**? Express in Latin *they are overcome by weapons, they are overcome by the Gauls.* Where does the tense sign in the passive differ from the tense sign in the active?

LESSON XXXVI

587. What is the antecedent of a relative pronoun? In what respects does a relative agree with its antecedent? In what case is a relative? Decline **qui**. Inflect **vāstō** in the active indicative, and make a synopsis of the third person singular and plural in the passive. Decline **vestrum cōnsilium, legiō p̄ima, and turris.** Express in Latin *the traders to whom I gave, the traders toward whom, among the mountains which I see, against those men whose sons are.* Give English derivatives from the words in 249.

LESSON XXXVII

588. Decline **castra** and **cōsul Rōmānus.** Inflect **vincō** and **recipiō** in the present system active and passive. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural of **vincō**. What is the second person singular of the present passive of **gerō**? the second person singular of the future passive of **vincō**? What are the third persons plural of the present and future active and passive of **dūcō** and **iaciō**? From what Latin words are *pacific, consulate, reception, and victor* derived?

LESSON XXXVIII

589. Decline the personal pronouns of the first, second, and third persons. Decline the reflexive pronouns of the first, second, and third persons. Why is the nominative of reflexive pronouns not

needed? Express in Latin *his, her, their, to him, to himself, him, himself, to me, with us*. Inflect **interficiō** in the active and passive indicative through the perfect tense, and make synopses in the third person singular and plural. What is the position of **cum** when it is used with personal pronouns?

LESSON XXXIX

590. Inflect **dicō** in the perfect system, and **impediō** in the present system. Make a synopsis of **incitō** in the third person singular and of **praebeō** in the third person plural. Give English words derived from **dicō**, **impediō**, and **incitō**. What is the difference in meaning of the perfect indefinite and the imperfect? Decline **aedificium**. Tell the reason for the case of each noun, adjective, and relative pronoun in 275.

LESSON XL

591. What kind of word is **suis**? When should it be used? When may it be omitted? How do you say *his, her, its, their*, when they are not reflexive? What kind of words are followed by an ablative of separation? Give six verbs that may be followed by this ablative. What prepositions are used with the ablative of separation? What other ablative is of the same nature as the ablative of separation? Inflect **dēsistō** in the indicative active, and **interclūdō** in the indicative passive. Give English derivatives from **privō**, **prohibeō**, and **dēsistō**.

LESSON XLI

592. What tenses of the verb belong to the present system? to the perfect system? to the participial system? Point out six uses of the ablative in 290. Inflect **gerō** throughout the indicative passive. Decline **impedimentum**, **imperātor**, and **mora brevis**. How do **concilium** and **cōnsilium** differ in meaning? Why does a participle change its endings?

LESSON XLII

593. What are the case endings of the fourth declension? What is the rule for the gender of nouns of the fourth declension? What exceptions are there to this rule? Decline **lacus**, **adventus**, **domus**, and

cornū. Inflect **mūniō** in the participial system, and make a synopsis in the third person plural active and passive. How are place from which and place to which expressed with the word **domus**? Give English words derived from **adventus**, **manus**, and **mūniō**.

LESSON XLIII

594. What are the three degrees of comparison of adjectives? Compare **fortis** and **longus**. Decline the positive, comparative, and superlative of **gravis**. Inflect **petō** in the indicative active and passive. Make a synopsis of **faciō** in the first person plural of the active voice. Decline **senātus Rōmānus** and **iter longum**. How do you say in Latin *rather long, too new, very brave, I shall march, we were attacking?*

LESSON XLIV

595. Compare **similis**, **dissimilis**, and **nōbilis**. Give two uses of the genitive and two of the dative case. What is a partitive genitive? Give an exception to the rule for the partitive genitive. Decline **pars** and **lītus angustum**. What adjectives are compared like **similis**? Compare **ācer**, and decline its comparative.

LESSON XLVI

596. Compare **bonus**, **summus**, **peior**, **plūrimus**, **minus**, and **maiōrem**, and decline each in the comparative degree. How is the comparative of **multus** used? What does **summus mōns** mean? Give English words that are derived from the words in 316. Give all the ways in which you have used each case.

LESSON XLVII

597. What do adverbs modify? What is the regular way of forming adverbs from adjectives? What cases of adjectives are used as adverbs? Give examples. Form and compare an adverb from an adjective of the first and second declensions; from an adjective of the third declension of one ending. Form and compare adverbs from **ācer**, **miser**, and **bonūs**. Decline **multitūdō**. Inflect **dō** throughout

the indicative. Inflect **praemittō** in the participial system. Make a synopsis of **relinquō** in the third person plural. Tell the reason for the case of the nouns in 329.

LESSON XLVIII.

598. What are the case endings for each declension in the nominative singular? in the genitive singular? in the other cases? What is the gender of nouns of the fourth declension? of the fifth? Give the case endings of the fifth declension. Decline **diēs**, **rēs**, and **aciēs**. Inflect **pōnō** in the present and the future indicative active, and **instruō** in the present system. Make a synopsis of **pōnō** in the third person singular. Give three uses of the accusative case. How is time during which expressed? How is duration of time expressed?

LESSON L

599. What tenses has the subjunctive? What vowels characterize the present subjunctive of the several conjugations? Inflect the present subjunctive active and passive of **laudō**, **videō**, **gerō**, **recipiō**, **audiō**, and **sum**. To which system of the verb does the present subjunctive belong? How is purpose expressed in English? How in Latin? When is **ut** used in purpose clauses? When is **nē** used? Translate **venit ut videat** in five ways. Are purpose clauses independent or dependent? Are they adjectives, adverbs, or nouns in nature?

LESSON LI

600. How is the imperfect subjunctive formed? Inflect the present and the imperfect subjunctive active and passive of **portō**, **terreō**, **mittō**, **iaciō**, and **mūniō**. To which system does the imperfect subjunctive belong? What do you understand by sequence of tenses? What are the primary tenses? What are the secondary tenses? Give the rules for the sequence of tenses, and for the tense of the subjunctive in purpose clauses. Translate **vēnit ut vidēret** in as many ways as you can. Tell the reason for the tense of each subjunctive in 353.

LESSON LII

601. Explain the difference between a substantive clause of purpose and an adverbial clause of purpose. Give an example of each. With what verbs are substantive clauses of purpose found? What is the rule for result clauses? What words in the independent clause indicate that a result clause will follow? Inflect *agō* in the present system. What English words are derived from *agō* and *imperō*?

LESSON LIV

602. What is an indirect question? In what mood is its verb? State when each tense may be used. How is the perfect subjunctive formed in the active voice? in the passive? Inflect *rogō* in all the tenses of the subjunctive active. To which system do the perfect and the pluperfect passive subjunctive belong? Inflect *audiō* in all tenses of that system. Make a synopsis of *rogō* in the third person singular. Express in Latin *I know who is fighting, I knew who had fought.* Tell the reason for the mood and tense of each subjunctive in 375.

LESSON LV

603. Count in Latin to ten. What are cardinals? What are ordinals? Decline *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and *mille*. How is *mille* used? What is the difference between the possessive and the objective genitive? Give examples of each. Inflect the subjunctive active of *discēdō*. Decline *passus* and *dexter*. What Latin words are suggested by *timorous*, *million*, *unicorn*, *dual*, *dexterity*, *memory*? Give all the English words you can think of that are derived from *ūnus*.

LESSON LVI

604. Decline *aeger* and *neuter*. Decline *magnus* and *nūllus*. What are the ten irregular adjectives of the first and second declensions? Give English derivatives from the words in 386. Say in Latin *which of the two do you see? one is a farmer, another is a slave, a third is a poet.*

LESSON LVII

605. How many tenses has the infinitive mood? What are they? How is each formed? To which system of the verb does the perfect infinitive active belong? the perfect infinitive passive? the future infinitive active? How is the future active participle of a verb formed? What are the infinitives of *gerō*? What do they mean? What part of speech is an infinitive? Name two uses of the infinitive, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence. What is a complementary infinitive? What is the case of a predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive? What English words are suggested by *dēbeō*? Tell how each infinitive in 396 is used.

LESSON LVIII

606. Mention three uses of the infinitive mood. Say in Latin *I desire to learn the way* and *I desire you to learn the way*. What uses of the infinitive do these sentences illustrate? What kind of clause is used with *imperō*? with *iubeō*? What is an indirect statement? In what mood is its verb? When are the different tenses of this mood used in indirect statements? What is an indirect question? In what mood is the verb of an indirect question? When are the different tenses of this mood used in indirect questions? When *sē* and *suus* occur in indirect statements, to what do they frequently refer? Express in Latin *Cæsar was a general*; then express it indirectly after *I know*, *I knew*, and *I shall know*. Give English derivatives from the words in 403. Make a synopsis of *iubeō* in the third person singular. Give the infinitives of *iubeō* and of *cognoscō*. Explain the reason for the tense of each infinitive in 404.

LESSON LX

607. Give the meanings of *is*, *idem*, *hic*, *ille*, *iste*, *ipse*. Of what is *idem* compounded? What part of *idem* remains unchanged in declension? How is the accusative singular masculine written? Pronounce the neuter nominative singular. What does *ipse* do in a sentence? Inflect *possum* throughout and make synopses. What usage

of the infinitive generally accompanies **possum**? What English words are derived from **nihil**, **putō**, **respondeō**, and **nūntiō**?

LESSON LXI

608. Name four indefinite pronouns. Decline **quīdam** and **aliquis**. Name seven kinds of pronouns, giving an example of each. Review the declension of the various pronouns. Give the usages that you have learned for the several cases of nouns. Illustrate each by a brief Latin sentence.

LESSON LXII

609. Recite the rule for the dative with compounds. Give some compound verbs with which the dative is used. What is the double dative? Inflect **dēsum** in all moods. Name a compound verb which takes both an accusative and a dative. What Latin words are suggested by the English words *munitions*, *prefect*, *subsidize*, *occurrence*? Illustrate the dative of purpose by a Latin sentence. Tell the reason for the case of the nouns and for the mood and tense of the subjunctives in 430.

LESSON LXIII

610. Inflect **volō** and **nōlō**. Make a synopsis of each in the third person singular and plural. Give the rule for the dative with special intransitive verbs, and name verbs followed by such a dative. Say in Latin in two ways *Cæsar ordered the men to come into the camp*. Decline **mulier**, **sōl**, and **occāsus**. Inflect **resistō** in the present subjunctive and the future indicative active. Explain sequence of tenses. What tenses are used in purpose clauses, and when?

LESSON LXV

611. How is the present participle formed? the future active participle? the future passive participle? Give the participles of **gerō** and their meanings. Decline **fugiēns**. What part of speech is a participle? What is the rule for the agreement of participles? Explain the tenses of participles. Translate **Gallī territi ex agris**

fugiēbant in six ways. Give English words derived from *commoveō* and *reducō*. Inflect *commoveō* in the present system. Give the infinitives and the participles of *reducō*.

LESSON LXVII

612. What is an ablative absolute? In what three ways is it formed? Give examples. Which participles are used in making the ablative absolute, and what time do they express? Translate *bellō factō* in five ways. Express in Latin *having captured the town they freed the captives*. Decline *dēditiō* and *rīpa*. What does *media urbs* mean? Give the rule for the ablative absolute.

LESSON LXVIII

613. Name two parts of the verb which are verbal nouns. Decline the gerunds of *iaciō* and of *mittō*. What is used in place of the nominative of the gerund? Translate *ad petendum*. What other ways of expressing the same idea are there in Latin? Inflect *eō* throughout. Make synopses in each person. Decline *nōmen* and *spatium*. Give English words suggested by the Latin words of 463. Give the infinitives and the participles of *ōrō*, with their meanings.

LESSON LXIX

614. What other name has the gerundive? What part of speech is a gerund? What part of speech is a gerundive? Decline the gerund and the gerundive of *videō*. Name two uses of the gerundive. Express in Latin *for the purpose of capturing the city* and *the signal had to be given*. Decline *vīs*. Inflect *augeō* in the indicative active, *conveniō* in the subjunctive active, and *ferō* throughout, and give synopses of each. State what you know about the uses of participles.

LESSON LXXI

615. What is a deponent verb? What active forms has a deponent verb? Inflect *cōnor* throughout. Give a Latin sentence containing an ablative of specification. What uses of the ablative case do you

know? What English words are suggested by **sequor**, **hortor**, and **experior**? Make a synopsis of **sequor** in the third person singular.

LESSON LXXII

616. Inflect **faciō** in the active and the passive voice. Make a synopsis of **vereor** in the third person plural. What is a clause? What clauses thus far studied have had a verb in the subjunctive? in the infinitive? Recite the rule for temporal clauses introduced by **cum**. Say in Latin *I was informed by you, you informed me.*

LESSON LXXIV

617. What substantive clauses have you studied? In which mood are their verbs? Give the rule for **quod** clauses of fact. Say in Latin *that road, as we have shown, was more difficult*. Decline **lēgātiō**. Inflect **ēgredior** throughout. Make synopses of **cōgō**. Give English words suggested by the words in 498.

LESSON LXXV

618. What is the rule for the main verb of a statement that is given indirectly? for the subordinate verb of such a statement? What determines the sequence of tenses in indirect statements? Compare **celeriter** and decline **initium**. Inflect **mōrō** and **revertor** throughout. What uses do you know for each case of nouns (512)? How have you used the subjunctive mood (513)? the infinitive (513)? the participle (513)?

APPENDIX I

RULES OF SYNTAX

NOTE. These rules are here numbered consecutively for the convenience of teachers and pupils. The number in parentheses following a rule is its section number.

619. Agreement.

1. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number (29).
2. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb (87).
3. A predicate adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the verb (88).
4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains (94).
5. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case (79).
6. A predicate adjective used with a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb (394, b).
7. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the way it is used in its own clause (248).

620. Nominative Case.

8. The subject of a verb is in the nominative case (28).

621. Genitive Case.

9. The word denoting the owner or possessor is in the genitive case (44).
10. Words denoting a part may have with them a genitive of the whole from which the part is taken (309).

11. Some nouns of action and feeling may have with them a genitive to express the object of the action or feeling implied in the nouns (381).

12. The genitive denotes that of which something consists or is made (p. 79, note 1)

622. Dative Case.

13. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case (57).

14. Certain adjectives meaning *near*, *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites, may be accompanied by a dative to show the person or the thing toward which the quality of the adjective is directed (111).

15. Some verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, and **super**, take a dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative (425).

16. The dative is used to denote the purpose for which a thing serves (427).

17. The dative is used to denote the person (or, rarely, the thing) affected by the action or situation expressed by the verb (428).

18. Most verbs meaning *believe*, *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their opposites, also *command*, *obey*, *pardon*, *persuade*, *resist*, *serve*, *spare*, and the like, take a dative of the indirect object (433).

623. Accusative Case.

19. The object of a verb is in the accusative case (33).

20. Place *to which* is usually expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**; but with the names of towns, and with **domus**, the preposition is omitted (230, b).

21. The accusative is used with certain prepositions (193).

22. Extent of time or of space is expressed by the accusative (333).

23. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative (399).

624. Ablative Case.

24. Place *where* is commonly expressed by a phrase consisting of a preposition, usually **in**, with the ablative case (59).

25. The means by which an action is accomplished is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (122).

26. The ablative with **cum** is used with abstract nouns to denote the manner of an action; but **cum** may be omitted if an adjective modifies the noun of the phrase (129).

27. The ablative with **cum** is used to show accompaniment (143).

28. Place *from which* is usually expressed by the ablative with **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**); but with the names of towns, and with **domus**, the preposition is omitted (230, *a*).

29. The ablative without a preposition is used to express cause (185).

30. The ablative is used with certain prepositions (194).

31. The time at which or within which a thing happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (219).

32. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab** (243).

33. Words signifying *privation*, *removal*, or *separation* are followed by the ablative without a preposition, or with the prepositions **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**) (282).

34. The degree of difference is expressed by the ablative (321).

35. The ablative of a noun or pronoun, with a participle, a noun, or an adjective in agreement, is used to express *time*, *cause*, *concession*, *condition*, or other relations (455).

36. The ablative without a preposition is used to denote in what respect something is true (481).

625. Adverbial Clauses.

37. The cause of an action may be expressed by a dependent clause introduced by **quod** (51).

38. The subjunctive is used with **ut** or **nē** in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action stated in the independent clause (344).

39. The subjunctive is used with *ut* or *ut nōn* in a dependent clause to express the result of the action stated in the independent clause (358).

40. Temporal clauses referring to past time, when introduced by *cum*, have their verb in the indicative if they fix the time of an action, but in the subjunctive if they describe the circumstances of an action (488).

41. Adverbial clauses introduced by *quā* and *ut* (= *as*) have their verbs in the indicative (497).

626. Adjective Clauses.

42. A relative clause modifies its antecedent as an adjective modifying its noun (247, b).

627. Substantive Clauses.

43. Verbs meaning *ask*, *command*, *persuade*, and *urge* may have for their object a clause of purpose with its verb in the subjunctive (356).

44. An indirect question, with its verb in the subjunctive, may be used as the subject or the object of another verb (372, b).

45. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the subject of another verb (393).

46. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the object of another verb (393).

47. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used with verbs meaning *say*, *think*, *know*, *perceive*, and the like, to express an indirect statement (401).

48. The indicative is used with *quod* in a substantive clause to state something which is regarded as a fact (496).

628. Participles, the Gerund, and the Gerundive.

49. A participle may be used as an adjective to modify a noun; or it may express the idea that might otherwise be expressed by a clause of *time*, *concession*, *cause*, or *condition*, or by a *relative* clause (443–445).

50. The gerund is a verbal noun used in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular, with the constructions of regular nouns (461).

51. When a gerund with an object might be used, the gerundive is the more usual construction. The gerundive is a verbal adjective in agreement with a noun (471, 472).

52. The gerund or the gerundive with **ad** or **causā** may be used to express the purpose of an action (461, 472).

53. The gerundive is used with the forms of the verb **sum** to express necessary action (473).

629. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statements.

54. The verbs of the subordinate clauses of an indirect statement are in the subjunctive (502).

FORMATION OF LATIN WORDS

During the first year of the study of Latin the pupil should learn the force of the prefixes and suffixes given below.

630. Prefixes.

ā- (*ab-, abs-*), *away from, from*
ad-, *to, toward, against*
con-, *together; completely*
dē-, *down from; from*
ex- (ē-), *out from, out of; completely*
in-, *in, into, on, toward*
in-, *not; like English *un-*, *in-**
inter-, *between*
per-, *through; thoroughly*
prae-, *in front of, in advance*
prō-, *forward, forth, for*
re- (*red-*), *back, again*
sub- (*subs-*), *under, from under, up*
trāns- (*trā-*), *across, through*

ab + dūcō = abdūcō, *lead away*
ad + dūcō = addūcō, *lead to*
con + dūcō = condūcō, *lead together*
dē + dūcō = dēdūcō, *lead down*
ē + dūcō = ēdūcō, *lead out*.
in + dūcō = indūcō, *lead in, lead on*
in + amīcus = inimīcus, *unfriendly*
inter + cēdō = intercēdō, *go between*
per + dūcō = perdūcō, *lead through*
prae + mittō = praemittō, *send ahead*
prō + dūcō = prōdūcō, *lead forth*
re + dūcō = redūcō, *lead back*
su(b)s + teneō = sustineō, *hold up, sustain*
trā + dūcō = trādūcō, *lead across*

631. Explain the formation of the following verbs, and give the meaning of each :

appropinquō	cognōscō	incolō	īnstruō	persuādeō
convocō	dēpōnō	sustineō	conlocō	addūcō
exspectō	reddō	reperiō	cōnstituō	redūcō
dēmōnstrō	dēsum	respondeō	ēdūcō	suscipiō
compleō	coniciō	recipiō	trādō	accēdō
perturbō	permittō	impediō	commoveō	perficiō
praebeō	trānseō	incitō	praeficiō	ēgredior
prohibeō	prōgredior	expugnō	praestō	cōgō
dēsistō	exīstimō	perveniō	praesum	cōnsuēscō
accipiō	cōfirmō	praemittō	resistō	revertor
dēbeō	dēfendō	conveniō	excēdō	prōcēdō

632. Suffixes.

a. The suffixes **-tās**, **-tūs**, and **-ia**, when added to the stems of nouns, make other nouns denoting *condition* or *characteristic*:

cīvi (stem of *cīvis*, *citizen*) + **tās** = *cīvitās*, *citizenship* (the condition or characteristic of a citizen); *state*, *tribe*.

vir (weakened stem of *vir*, *man*) + **tūs** = *virtūs*, *manliness*, *valor* (the characteristic of a man).

b. The suffixes **-ia**, **-tia**, **-tās**, and **-tūdō**, when added to the stems of adjectives, make abstract nouns denoting *quality* or *condition*:

alti (weakened stem of *altus*, *high*) + **tūdō** = *altitūdō*, *height* (the quality or condition of being high).

c. The suffixes **-iō**, **-tiō**, **-tus**, and **-ium**, when added to the stems of verbs, make verbal nouns denoting an *act* or the *result of an act*:

mūni (stem of *mūniō*, *fortify*) + **tiō** = *mūnitiō*, *a fortifying*, *a fortification* (the act of fortifying, or the result of the act of fortifying).

633. Explain the formation of the following nouns :

victōria	nātiō	aedificium	celeritās	dēditiō
praemium	cōnsilium	adventus	difficultās	ēruptiō
studium	legiō	exercitus	mūnitiō	altitūdō
imperium	multitūdō	equitātus	praesidium	facultās
virtūs	cīvitās	cōspectus	subsidiū	lēgātiō
conloquium	tempestās	memoria	occāsus	condiciō

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

634. Suggestions for a Notebook. In making a collection of the English words that are derived from the Latin words of the vocabularies, the pupil should keep the results of his work in a notebook. Such a book should contain, in addition to the list of derivatives, the definition of each derivative, and a brief sentence illustrating its use. A suggested form of arrangement for the notebook follows:

DERIVATIVES OF **Vocō**, *call*

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus	vocation, vocational, vocal, evoke, convocate, convocation, vocative, revoke, invoke, vociferous, invocation
	vocation : a <i>calling</i> , occupation vocational : pertaining to a vocation or <i>calling</i> vocal : pertaining to the voice evoke : <i>call</i> out convocate : <i>call</i> together convocation : a <i>calling</i> together, an assembly vocative : case of <i>calling</i> , case of address revoke : <i>call</i> back invoke : <i>call</i> upon, ask for vociferous : of large <i>calling</i> power, with a loud voice invocation : a <i>calling</i> upon, a prayer
	vocation : The choice of a vocation is not always easy vocational : Vocational guidance is often necessary vocal : He is receiving vocal instruction evoke : His remarks evoked applause convocate : He will convocate the council convocation : Convocation day is at hand vocative : The vocative is not common in Cæsar revoke : Their punishment will be revoked invoke : The ancients invoked many gods vociferous : The audience became vociferous invocation : The invocation was then made

635. The following verbs are especially worthy of study in the manner suggested above because of the large number of English words derived from them :

amō	dūcō	audiō	locō (conlocō)	nāvigō
videō	mittō	dīcō	cēdō	pōnō
habeō	capiō	vincō	parō	cognōscō
doceō	iaciō	faciō	pugnō	putō
moneō	sedeō (obsideō)	dō	teneō	moveō
terreō	timeō	agō	veniō	sūmō

The prefixes listed in 630, and also *ante*, *before*, *circum*, *around*, *ob*, *toward*, and *super*, *above*, usually are evident in the English derivatives of Latin words. But sometimes the prefix appears in a different spelling : thus,

- ab- appears as a-, abs-, as- (*abstain*)
- ad- appears as ac-, ag-, al-, ap-, ar-, as-, at- (*apparatus*)
- con- appears as com-, co-, col-, cor- (*composition*)
- in- appears as im-, ir-, il- (*impose*)
- ob- appears as oc-, of-, obs-, o- (*occur*)
- sub- appears as suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sur- (*suppose*)

APPENDIX II

DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

NOUNS

636.

FIRST DECLENSION

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
<i>Nom.</i>	hasta	-a	hastae
<i>Gen.</i>	hastae	-ae	hastārum
<i>Dat.</i>	hastae	-ae	hastīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hastam	-am	hastās
<i>Abl.</i>	hastā	-ā	hastīs

637.

SECOND DECLENSION

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
	MASC.		MASC.
<i>Nom.</i>	hortus	-us	hortī
<i>Gen.</i>	hortī	-ī	hortōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hortō	-ō	hortīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hortum	-um	hortōs
<i>Abl.</i>	hortō	-ō	hortīs

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
	NEUT.		NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	dōnum	-um	dōna
<i>Gen.</i>	dōnī	-ī	dōnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	dōnō	-ō	dōnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	dōnum	-um	dōna
<i>Abl.</i>	dōnō	-ō	dōnīs

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	puer	ager	vir	filius
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	filiī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	filiō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrum	virum	filiūm
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	filiō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	filiī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	filiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filiīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	filiōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filiīs

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	proelium
<i>Gen.</i>	proelī
<i>Dat.</i>	proeliō
<i>Acc.</i>	proelium
<i>Abl.</i>	proeliō

PLURAL

proelia
proeliōrum
proeliīs
proelia
proeliīs

638.

THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	mīles	virtūs	caput
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	mīlitis	virtūtis	capitis
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	mīlitī	virtūtī	capitī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	mīlitem	virtūtem	caput
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	mīlite	virtūte	capite

CASE ENDINGS

M. AND F.	N.
-s or —	—
-is	-is
-ī	-ī
-em	—
-e	-e

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	mīlitum	virtūtum	capitum
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus

—ēs	-a
-um	-um
-ibus	-ibus
-ēs	-a
-ibus	-ibus

639.

I-STEMS

SINGULAR

CASE ENDINGS

M. AND F. N.

<i>Nom.</i>	hostis	cohors	mōns	mare	-s (-is, -ēs) —
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	cohortis	montis	maris	-is —
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	cohortī	montī	marī	-ī —
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	cohortem	montem	mare	-em (-im) —
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	cohorte	monte	marī	-e (-ī) —

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	cohortēs	montēs	maria	-ēs —ia
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	cohortium	montium	marium	-ium —ium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	cohortibus	montibus	maribus	-ibus —ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostīs (-ēs)	cohortīs (-ēs)	montīs (-ēs)	maria	-īs (-ēs) —ia
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	cohortibus	montibus	maribus	-ibus —ibus

SING.

PLUR.

SING.

PLUR.

<i>Nom.</i>	ignis	ignēs	turris	turrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ignis	ignium	turris	turrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ignī	ignibus	turrī	turribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ignem	ignīs (-ēs)	turrim (-em)	turrīs (-ēs)
<i>Abl.</i>	ignī (-e)	ignibus	turrī (-e)	turribus

640.

FOURTH DECLENSION

SINGULAR

CASE ENDINGS

CASE ENDINGS

MASC.

NEUT.

<i>Nom.</i>	exercitus	-us	cornū	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	exercitūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	exercituī (-ū)	-ūī (-ū)	cornū	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitum	-um	cornū	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitū	-ū	cornū	-ū

PLURAL				CASE ENDINGS	
	CASE ENDINGS			CASE ENDINGS	
	MASC.			NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	exercitūs	-ūs		cornua	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	exercituum	-uum		cornuum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	exercitibus	-ibus (-ubus)		cornibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitūs	-ūs		cornua	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitibus	-ibus (-ubus)		cornibus	-ibus

641.

FIFTH DECLENSION

CASE ENDINGS

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	diērum	rei	rērum	-ēī	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	diēbus	rei	rēbus	-ēī	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

642.

SPECIAL PARADIGMS

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	deus	domus	iter	vīs
<i>Gen.</i>	deī	domūs (-ī)	itineris	vīs
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	domuī (-ō)	itinerī	vī
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	domum	iter	vim
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	domō (-ū)	itinere	vī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	deī (diī, dī)	domūs	itinera	vīrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	deōrum (deum)	domuum (-ōrum)	itinerum	vīrium
<i>Dat.</i>	deīs (diīs, dīs)	domibus	itineribus	vīribus
<i>Acc.</i>	deōs	domōs (-ūs)	itinera	vīris (-ēs)
<i>Abl.</i>	deīs (diīs, dīs)	domibus	itineribus	vīribus

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	Iuppiter
<i>Gen.</i>	Iovis
<i>Dat.</i>	Iovī
<i>Acc.</i>	Iovem
<i>Abl.</i>	Iovē

ADJECTIVES

643. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bonus</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>bonum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonārum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>līber</i>	<i>lībera</i>	<i>līberum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>līberī</i>	<i>līberae</i>	<i>līberī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>līberō</i>	<i>līberae</i>	<i>līberō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>līberum</i>	<i>līberam</i>	<i>līberum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>līberō</i>	<i>līberā</i>	<i>līberō</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>līberī</i>	<i>līberae</i>	<i>lībera</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>līberōrum</i>	<i>līberārum</i>	<i>līberōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>līberīs</i>	<i>līberīs</i>	<i>līberīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>līberōs</i>	<i>līberās</i>	<i>lībera</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>līberīs</i>	<i>līberīs</i>	<i>līberīs</i>

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>noster</i>	<i>nostra</i>	<i>nostrum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>nostrī</i>	<i>nostrae</i>	<i>nostrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>nostrō</i>	<i>nostrae</i>	<i>nostrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>nostrum</i>	<i>nostram</i>	<i>nostrum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>nostrō</i>	<i>nostrā</i>	<i>nostrō</i>

PLURAL			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	nostrī	nostræ	nostra
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
<i>Abl.</i>	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

644.

THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
M. AND F.	N.		M. AND F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	brevis	breve	
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	brevis	brevis	
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī	brevī	brevī	
<i>Acc.</i>	audācēm	audāx	brevem	breve	
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī (-e)	audācī (-e)	brevī	brevī	

PLURAL			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācia	brevēs	brevia	
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium	brevium	brevium	
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	brevibus	brevibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	audācīs (-ēs)	audācia	brevīs (-ēs)	brevia	
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	brevibus	brevibus	

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācī	ācī	ācī	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācī	ācī	ācī	ācribus	ācribus

645.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M. AND F.	N.		M. AND F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia	
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium	
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns	amantīs (-ēs)	amantia	
<i>Abl.</i>	amante (-ī)	amante (-ī)	amantibus	amantibus	

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
Nom.	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
Gen.	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
Dat.	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
Acc.	euntem	iēns	euntis (-ēs)	euntia
Abl.	eunte (-ī)	eunte (-ī)	euntibus	euntibus

646.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.		N.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs		tria
Gen.	ūniūs	ūniūs	ūniūs	trium		trium
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus		tribus
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trīs (trēs)		tria
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus		tribus
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.	
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	mīlle		mīlia
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle		mīlīum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle		mīlibus
Acc.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	mīlle		mīlia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle		mīlibus

647.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
brevis	brevior, brevius	brevissimus, -a, -um
audāx	audācior, audācius	audācissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrius, -a, -um
ācer	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrius, -a, -um

648.

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

SINGULAR

M. AND F.

<i>Nom.</i>	lātiōr
<i>Gen.</i>	lātiōris
<i>Dat.</i>	lātiōrī
<i>Acc.</i>	lātiōrem
<i>Abl.</i>	lātiōre (-ī)

N.

lātiōs
lātiōris
lātiōrī
lātiōs
lātiōre (-ī)

PLURAL

M. AND F.

lātiōrēs
lātiōrum
lātiōribus
lātiōrēs (-īs)
lātiōribus

N.

lātiōra
lātiōrum
lātiōribus
lātiōra
lātiōribus

M. AND F.

N.

<i>Nom.</i>	plūs
<i>Gen.</i>	plūris
<i>Dat.</i>	—
<i>Acc.</i>	plūs
<i>Abl.</i>	plūre

M. AND F.

N.

plūrēs
plūrium
plūribus
plūrīs (-ēs)
plūra

649.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

POSITIVE

bonus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um
multī, -ae, -a
parvus, -a, -um
facilis, -e
difficilis, -e
similis, -e
dissimilis, -e

*exterus, outward**inferus, below**posterus, following**superus, above*

COMPARATIVE

melior, melius
peior, peius
maiōr, maius
—, plūs
plūrēs, plūra

*exterior, outer,**exterior**inferior, lower**posterior, later**superior, higher*

SUPERLATIVE

optimus, -a, -um
pessimus, -a, -um
maximus, -a, -um
plūrimus, -a, -um
plūrimī, -ae, -a,

*minimus, -a, -um**facillimus, -a, -um**difficillimus, -a, -um**simillimus, -a, -um**dissimillimus, -a, -um**extrēmus } outermost,**extimus } last**infimus } lowest**īmus**postrēmus } last**postumus }**suprēmus } highest**summus }*

POSITIVE

- [*cis, citrā, on this side*]
- [*in, intrā, in, within*]
- [*prae, prō, before*]
- [*prope, near*]
- [*ultrā, beyond*]

COMPARATIVE

- citerior, hither*
- interior, inner*
- prior, former*
- propior, nearer*
- ulterior, farther*

SUPERLATIVE

- citimus, hithermost*
- intimus, inmost*
- prīmus, first*
- proximus, next*
- ultimus, farthest*

650.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE

- cārē (cārus)*
- miserē (miser)*
- āriter (ācer)*
- facile (facilis)*
- bene (bonus)*
- male (malus)*
- multum (multus)*
- parum, little*
- diū, long, a long time*
- saepe, often*

COMPARATIVE

- cārius*
- miserius*
- ācrius*
- facilius*
- melius*
- peius*
- plūs*
- minus*
- diūtius*
- saepius*

SUPERLATIVE

- cārissimē*
- miserrimē*
- ācerimē*
- facillimē*
- optimē*
- pessimē*
- plūrimum*
- minimē*
- diūtissimē*
- saepissimē*

651.

NUMERALS

CARDINALS

1. *ūnus, -a, -um*
2. *duo, duae, duo*
3. *trēs, tria*
4. *quattuor*
5. *quīnque*
6. *sex*
7. *septem*
8. *octō*
9. *novem*
10. *decem*
11. *ūndecim*
12. *duodecim*
13. *tredecim*
14. *quattuordecim*

ORDINALS

- prīmus, -a, -um*
- secundus (or alter)*
- tertius*
- quārtus*
- quīntus*
- sextus*
- septimus*
- octāvus*
- nōnus*
- decimus*
- ūndecimus*
- duodecimus*
- tertius decimus*
- quārtus decimus*

CARDINALS

15. quīndecim
 16. sēdecim
 17. septendecim
 18. duodēvīgintī
 19. ūndēvīgintī
 20. vīgintī
 21. { vīgintī ūnus *or*
 { ūnus et vīgintī
 22. { vīgintī duo *or*
 { duo et vīgintī
 28. duodētrīgintā
 29. ūndētrīgintā
 30. trīgintā
 40. quadrāgintā
 50. quīnquāgintā
 60. sexāgintā
 70. septuāgintā
 80. octōgintā
 90. nōnāgintā
 100. centum
 101. { centum ūnus *or*
 { centum et ūnus
 200. ducentī, -ae, -a
 300. trecentī
 400. quadrīgentī
 500. quīngentī
 600. sescentī
 700. septingentī
 800. octingentī
 900. nōngentī
 1000. mīlle
 2000. duo mīlia
 100,000. centum mīlia

ORDINALS

- quīntus decimus
 sextus decimus
 septimus decimus
 duodēvīcēnsimus
 ūndēvīcēnsimus
 vīcēnsimus
 { vīcēnsimus prīmus *or*
 { ūnus et vīcēnsimus
 { vīcēnsimus secundus *or*
 { alter et vīcēnsimus
 duodētrīcēnsimus
 ūndētrīcēnsimus
 trīcēnsimus
 quadrāgēnsimus
 quīnquāgēnsimus
 sexāgēnsimus
 septuāgēnsimus
 octōgēnsimus
 nōnāgēnsimus
 centēnsimus
 { centēnsimus prīmus *or*
 { centēnsimus et prīmus
 ducentēnsimus
 trecentēnsimus
 quadrīgentēnsimus
 quīngentēnsimus
 sescentēnsimus
 septingentēnsimus
 octingentēnsimus
 nōngentēnsimus
 mīllēnsimus
 bis mīllēnsimus
 centiēns mīllēnsimus

PRONOUNS

652.

PERSONAL

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego, <i>I</i>	nōs, <i>we</i>	tū, <i>you</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>		
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrū (-trī)	tuī	vestrū (-trī)		
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tībi	vōbīs		
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs		
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs		
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	is, <i>he</i>	iī (eī), <i>they</i>	ea, <i>she</i>	eae, <i>they</i>	id, <i>it</i>	ea, <i>they</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	eius,	eōrum,	eius,	eārum,	eius,	eōrum,
	<i>his</i>	<i>their</i>	<i>her</i>	<i>their</i>	<i>its</i>	<i>their</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	iīs (eīs)	eī	iīs (eīs)	eī	iīs (eīs)
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eōs	eam	eās	id	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	iīs (eīs)	eā	iīs (eīs)	eō	iīs (eīs)

a. *Hic* (654) and *ille* (654) are also used as pronouns of the third person.

653.

REFLEXIVE

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	meī, <i>of</i> myself	nostrī, <i>of</i> ourselves	tuī, <i>of</i> yourself	vestrī, <i>of</i> yourselves	suī, <i>of him-</i> <i>self, herself, them-</i> <i>itself</i>	suī, <i>of</i> <i>himself, herself, them-</i> <i>selves</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tībi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

654.

DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

SINGULAR

PLURAL

MASC.

FEM.

NEUT.

MASC.

FEM.

NEUT.

<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illorum	illarum	illorum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī (eī)	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)

<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	e'adēm	idem	{ īidēm eīdēm	eaēdēm	e'adēm
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundēm	eārundēm	eōrundēm
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdēm	eīdēm	eīdēm	{ īīsdēm eīsdēm	īīsdēm eīsdēm	īīsdēm eīsdēm
<i>Acc.</i>	eundēm	eandēm	idem	eōsdēm	eāsdēm	e'adēm
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdēm	eādēm	eōdēm	{ īīsdēm eīsdēm	īīsdēm eīsdēm	īīsdēm eīsdēm

<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

655.

RELATIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

656.

INTERROGATIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis (qui)	quae	quid (quod)	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quos	quas	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

657.

INDEFINITE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis (aliqui)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Gen.</i>	alicius	alicius	alicius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	quidam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

	PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdām
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisque	quaeque	quidque (quodque)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque
<i>Dat.</i>	cuique	cuique	cuiquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemque	quamque	quidque (quodque)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōque	quāque	quōquam

Plural rare

Plural missing

REGULAR VERBS

658. FIRST CONJUGATION — Ā-Verbs

*amō, love*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *a'mō, amā're, amā'vī, amā'tus*Pres. Stem *amā-* Perf. Stem *amāv-* Part. Stem *amāt-*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

I love, am loving, do love, etc.

<i>a'mō</i>	<i>amā'mus</i>
<i>a'mās</i>	<i>amā'tis</i>
<i>a'mat</i>	<i>amāmant</i>

PRESENT

PASSIVE VOICE

I am loved, etc.

<i>a'mor</i>	<i>amā'mur</i>
<i>amā'ris</i>	<i>amā'minī</i>
<i>amā'tur</i>	<i>aman'tur</i>

IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

<i>amā'bam</i>	<i>amā'bā'mus</i>	<i>amā'bar</i>	<i>amā'bā'mur</i>
<i>amā'bās</i>	<i>amā'bā'tis</i>	<i>amā'bā'ris</i>	<i>amā'bā'minī</i>
<i>amā'bāt</i>	<i>amā'bā'bant</i>	<i>amā'bā'tur</i>	<i>amā'bān'tur</i>

APPENDIX II

267

FUTURE

I shall love, etc.

amā'bō	amā'bimus
amā'bis	amā'bitis
amā'bit	amā'bunt

I shall be loved, etc.

amā'bor	amā'bimur
amā'beris	amā'bī'minī
amā'bitur	amā'bun'tur

PERFECT

I have loved, loved, did love, etc.

amā'vī	amā'vimus
amā'vis'ti	amā'vis'tis
amā'vit	amā've'runt

I have been (was) loved, etc.

amā'tus	sum
es	sumus
est	sumtis

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

I had loved, etc.

amā'veram	amā'verā'mus
amā'verās	amā'verā'tis
amā'verat	amā'verant

I had been loved, etc.

amā'tus	erām
erās	erāmus
erat	erātis

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have loved, etc.

amā'verō	amā've'rīmus
amā'veris	amā've'ritis
amā'verit	amā'verint

I shall have been loved, etc.

amā'tus	erō
eris	erimus
erit	eritis

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

a'mem	amē'mus	a'mer	amē'mur
a'mēs	amē'tis	amē'ris	amē'minī
a'met	a'ment	amē'tur	amen'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

amā'rem	amārē'mus	amā'rē'rēr	amārē'mur
amā'rēs	amārē'tis	amārē'ris	amārē'minī
amā'ret	amā'rēnt	amārē'tur	amārēn'tur

PERFECT

amā'verim	amā'verī'mus	amā'tus	sim
amā'veris	amā'verī'tis	amā'tus	sīs
amā'verit	amā'verint	amā'tus	sit

amā'tī	sīmus
estis	sītis
sunt	sint

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

amāvis'sem	amāvissē'mus	amātus	essem	amā'ti	essēmus
amāvis'sēs	amāvissē'tis		essēs		essētis
amāvis'set	amāvis'sent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

a'mā, *love thou*
amā'te, *love ye*

amā're, *be thou loved*
amā'mini, *be ye loved*

FUTURE

amātō, *thou shalt love*
amātō, *he shall love*
amātōte, *you shall love*
amāntō, *they shall love*

amātor, *thou shalt be loved*
amātor, *he shall be loved*

amantor, *they shall be loved*

INFINITIVE

PRES. amā're, *to love*

amā'ri, *to be loved*

PERF. amāvis'se, *to have loved*

amā'tus esse, *to have been loved*

FUT. amātū'rūs esse, *to be about to
love*

[amā'tum irī, *to be about to be
loved*]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. a'māns, -antis, *loving*

PRES. —————

FUT. amātū'rūs, -a, -um, *about to
love*

GER.¹ aman'dus, -a, -um, *to be loved*
PERF. amā'tus, -a, -um, *having been
loved; loved*

PERF. —————

GERUND

Nom. —————

Gen. aman'di, *of loving*

Dat. aman'dō, *for loving*

Acc. aman'dum, *loving*

Abl. aman'dō, *by loving*

SUPINE

Acc. [amātūm, *to love*]

Abl. [amātū, *to love, in the loving*]

¹ Gerundive, sometimes called future passive participle.

659.

SECOND CONJUGATION — Ē-Verbs

moneō, advise

PRINCIPAL PARTS: mo'neō, monē're, mo'nūī, mo'nitus

Pres. Stem monē-

Perf. Stem monu-

Part. Stem monit-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

PRESENT

I advise, etc.

mo'neō	monē'mus
mo'nēs	monē'tis
mo'net	mo'nent

PASSIVE VOICE

I am advised, etc.

mo'neor	monē'mur
monē'ris	monē'mini
monē'tur	monen'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

monē'bam	monēbā'mus	monē'bar	monēbā'mur
monē'bās	monēbā'tis	monēbā'ris	monēbā'mini
monē'bat	monē'bant	monēbā'tur	monēban'tur

FUTURE

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

monē'bō	monē'bimus	monē'bor	monē'bimur
monē'bīs	monē'bītis	monē'bīris	monēbī'mini
monē'bīt	monē'bunt	monē'bītur	monēbun'tur

PERFECT

*I have advised, I advised, etc.**I have been (was) advised, etc.*

mo'nūī	monu'imus	mo'nitus	sum	mo'nīti	sumus
monu'is'ti	monu'is'tis		es	mo'nīti	estis
mo'nuit	monu'ē'runt		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monu'eram	monuerā'mus	mo'nitus	eram	mo'nīti	erāmus
monu'erās	monuerā'tis		erās	mo'nīti	erātis
monu'erat	monu'erant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have advised, etc.

monu'erō	monue'rimus
monu'eris	monue'ritis
monu'erit	monu'erint

I shall have been advised, etc.

mo'nitus	erō	erimus
	eris	eritis
	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

mo'neam	moneā'mus	mo'near	moneā'mur
mo'neās	moneā'tis	moneā'ris	moneā'mini
mo'neat	mo'neant	moneā'tur	monean'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

monē'rem	monērē'mus	monē'rer	monērē'mur
monē'rēs	monērē'tis	monērē'ris	monērē'mini
monē'ret	monē'rent	monērē'tur	monēren'tur

PERFECT

monu'erim	monuerī'mus	sim	sīmus
monu'eris	monuerī'tis	sīs	sītis
monu'erit	monu'erint	sit	sint

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

monuis'sem	monuissē'mus	essem	essēmus
monuis'sēs	monuissē'tis	essēs	essētis
monuis'set	monuis'sent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

mo'nē, advise thou
monē'te, advise ye

monē're, be thou advised
monē'mini, be ye advised

FUTURE

monētō, thou shalt advise
monētō, he shall advise
monētōte, you shall advise
monentō, they shall advise

monētor, thou shalt be advised
monētor, he shall be advised

monentor, they shall be advised

INFINITIVE

PRES. monē're, <i>to advise</i>	monē'ri, <i>to be advised</i>
PERF. monuis'se, <i>to have advised</i>	mo'nitus esse, <i>to have been advised</i>
FUT. monitū'rus esse, <i>to be about to advise</i>	[mo'nitum irī, <i>to be about to be advised</i>]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. mo'nēns, -entis, <i>advising</i>	PRES. _____
FUT. monitū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to advise</i>	GER. monen'dus, -a, -um, <i>to be advised</i>
PERF. _____	PERF. mo'nitus, -a, -um, <i>having been advised, advised</i>

GERUND

Nom. _____	
Gen. monen'di, <i>of advising</i>	
Dat. monen'dō, <i>for advising</i>	
Acc. monen'dum, <i>advising</i>	
Abl. monen'dō, <i>by advising</i>	

SUPINE

Acc. [monitum, <i>to advise</i>]	
Abl. [monitū, <i>to advise, in the advising</i>]	

660.

THIRD CONJUGATION — Ē-Verbs

*regō, rule*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *re'gō, re'gere, rē'xi, rēct'us*Pres. Stem *rege-*Perf. Stem *rēx-*Part. Stem *rēct-*

ACTIVE VOICE

I rule, etc.

re'gō	re'gimus
re'gis	re'gitis
re'git	re'gunt

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

PASSIVE VOICE

I am ruled, etc.

re'gor	re'gimur
re'geris	regi'mini
re'gitur	regun'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

I was ruling, etc.

regē'bam	regēbā'mus
regē'bās	regēbā'tis
regē'bat	regē'bant

regē'bar	regēbā'mur
regēbā'ris	regēbā'minī
regēbā'tur	regēban'tur

FUTURE

I shall rule, etc.

re'gam	regē'mus
re'gēs	regē'tis
re'get	re'gent

re'gar	regē'mur
regē'ris	regē'minī
regē'tur	regen'tur

PERFECT

I have ruled, etc.

rē'xi	rē'ximus
rēxis'ti	rēxis'tis
rē'xit	rēxē'runt

rēc'tus	sum	rēc'ti	sumus
	es		estis
	est		sunt

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

I had ruled, etc.

rē'xeram	rēxerā'mus
rē'xerās	rēxerā'tis
rē'xerat	rē'xerant

I had been ruled, etc.

rēc'tus	eram	rēc'ti	erāmus
	erās		erātis
	erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have ruled, etc.

rē'xerō	rēxe'rimus
rē'xeris	rēxe'ritis
rē'xerit	rē'xerint

I shall have been ruled, etc.

rēc'tus	erō	rēc'ti	erimus
	eris		eritis
	erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

re'gam	regā'mus
re'gās	regā'tis
re'gat	re'gant

re'gar	regā'mur
regā'ris	regā'minī
regā'tur	regan'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

re'gerem	regerē'mus
re'gerēs	regerē'tis
re'geret	re'gerent

re'gerer	regerē'mur
regerē'ris	regerē'minī
regerē'tur	regeren'tur

PERFECT

rē'xerim	rēxerī'mus	rēc'tus	sim sīs sit	rēc'tī	sīmus sītis sint
rē'xeris	rēxerī'tis				
rē'xerit	rē'xerint				

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

rēxis'sem	rēxisse'mus	rēc'tus	essem essēs esset	rēc'tī	essēmus essētis essent
rēxis'sēs	rēxisse'tis				
rēxis'set	rēxis'sent				

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

re'ge, rule thou	re'gere, be thou ruled
re'gite, rule ye	regi'minī, be ye ruled

FUTURE

regitō, thou shalt rule	regitor, thou shalt be ruled
regitō, he shall rule	regitor, he shall be ruled
regitōtē, ye shall rule	
reguntō, they shall rule	reguntor, they shall be ruled

INFINITIVE

PRES. re'gere, to rule	re'gī, to be ruled
PERF. rēxis'se, to have ruled	rēc'tus esse, to have been ruled
FUT. rēctū'rūs esse, to be about to rule	[rēc'tum īrī, to be about to be ruled]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. re'gēns, -entis, ruling	PRES. _____
FUT. rēctū'rūs, -a, -um, about to rule	GER. regen'dus, -a, -um, to be ruled
PERF. _____	PERF. rēc'tus, -a, -um, having been ruled, ruled

GERUND

Nom.	_____
Gen.	regen'dī, of ruling
Dat.	regen'dō, for ruling
Acc.	regen'dūm, ruling
Abl.	regen'dō, by ruling

SUPINE

Acc.	[rēctūm, to rule]
Abl.	[rēctū, to rule, in the ruling]

661. THIRD CONJUGATION — Verbs in -iō

capiō, take

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ca'piō, ca'pere, cē'pī, cap'tus*

Pres. Stem cape-

Perf. Stem cēp-

Part. Stem capt-

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE VOICE

I take, etc.

PRESENT

I am taken, etc.

ca'piō

ca'pimus

ca'pior

ca'pimur

ca'pis

ca'pitis

ca'peris

capi'minī

ca'pit

ca'piunt

ca'pitur

capiun'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

I was taking, etc.

I was taken, etc.

capiē'bam

capiēbā'mus

capiē'bar

capiēbā'mur

capiē'bās

capiēbā'tis

capiēbā'ris

capiēbā'minī

capiē'bat

capiē'bant

capiēbā'tur

capiēban'tur

FUTURE

I shall take, etc.

I shall be taken, etc.

ca'piam

capiē'mus

ca'piar

capiē'mur

ca'piēs

capiē'tis

capiē'ris

capiē'minī

ca'piet

ca'pient

capiē'tur

capien'tur

PERFECT

cē'pī, cēpis'tī, cē'pit, etc.

cap'tus sum, es, est, etc.

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

cē'peram, cē'perās, cē'perat, etc.

cap'tus eram, erās, erat, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

cē'perō, cē'peris, cē'perit, etc.

cap'tus erō, eris, erit, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

ca'piam, ca'piās, ca'piat, etc.

ca'piar, -iā'ris, -iā'tur, etc.

IMPERFECT (PAST)

ca'perem, ca'perēs, ca'peret, etc.

ca'perer, -erē'ris, -erē'tur, etc.

PERFECT

cē'perim, cē'peris, cē'perit, etc. cap'tus sim, sīs, sit, etc.

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

cēpis'sem, cēpis'sēs, cēpis'set, etc. cap'tus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRES. ca'pe, take thou
ca'pite, take ye

FUT. capitō, thou shalt take, etc. capitor, thou shalt be taken, etc.

INFINITIVE

PRES. ca'pere, to take ca'pī, to be taken

PERF. cēpis'se, to have taken cap'tus esse, to have been taken

FUT. captū'rūs esse, to be about to [cap'tum īrī, to be about to be
take taken]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. ca'piēns, -ientis, taking PRES. —————

FUT. captū'rūs, -a, -um, about to GER. capien'dus, -a, -um, to be taken
take

PERF. ————— PERF. cap'tus, -a, -um, having been
taken, taken

GERUND

Gen. capien'dī, of taking, etc.

SUPINE

Acc. [captum, to take]

Abl. [captū, to take, in the taking]

662.

FOURTH CONJUGATION — I-Verbs

audiō, hear

PRINCIPAL PARTS: au'diō, audi're, audi'vī, audi'tus

Pres. Stem audi- Perf. Stem audiv- Part. Stem audit-

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

I hear, etc.

PASSIVE VOICE

I am heard, etc.

au'diō

audi'mus

au'dior

audi'mur

au'dis

audi'tis

audi'ris

audi'minī

au'dit

audi'uent

audi'tur

audiun'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I was hearing, etc.*audiē'bam
audiē'bās
audiē'bataudiē'bā'mus
audiē'bā'tis
audiē'bantaudiē'bar
audiē'bā'ris
audiē'bā'turaudiē'bā'mur
audiē'bā'minī
audiēban'tur*I shall hear, etc.*au'diam
au'diēs
au'dietaudiē'mus
audiē'tis
au'dient

FUTURE

*I shall be heard, etc.*au'diar
audiē'ris
audiē'turaudiē'mur
audiē'minī
audien'tur*I have heard, etc.*audi'vī
audivis'tī
audi'vitaudī'vimus
audivis'tis
audivē'runt

PERFECT

*I have been heard, etc.*audi'vī
audivis'tī
audi'vitsum
es
estsumus
estis
sunt

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*I had heard, etc.*audi'veram
audi'verās
audi'verataudī'verā'mus
audī'verā'tis
audi'verantaudi'vī
audivis'tī
audi'viterāmus
erātis
erant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have heard, etc.*audi'verō
audi'veris
audi'veritaudī'verimus
audī'veritis
audi'verint*I shall have been heard, etc.*audi'vī
audivis'tī
audi'viterō
eris
eriterimus
eritis
erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

au'diam
au'diās
au'diataudiā'mus
audiā'tis
au'diantau'diar
audiā'ris
audiā'turaudiā'mur
audiā'minī
audian'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

audi'rem
audi'rēs
audi'retaudirē'mus
audirē'tis
audi'rentaudi'rer
audirē'ris
audirē'turaudirē'mur
audirē'minī
audirēn'tur

PERFECT

audi'verim	audi'veri'mus	audi'tus	sim	sīmus
audi'veris	audi'veri'tis		sīs	sītis
audi'verit	audi'verint		sit	sint

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

audi'vis'sem	audi'vissē'mus	audi'tus	essem	essēmus
audi'vis'sēs	audi'vissē'tis		essēs	essētis
audi'vis'set	audi'vis'sent		esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

au'dī, hear thou	audi're, be thou heard
audi'te, hear ye	audi'mini, be ye heard

FUTURE

auditō, thou shalt hear	audi'tor, thou shalt be heard
auditō, he shall hear	audi'tor, he shall be heard
auditōte, ye shall hear	
audiuntō, they shall hear	audiunctor, they shall be heard

INFINITIVE

PRES. audi're, to hear	audi'ri, to be heard
PERF. audi'vis'se, to have heard	audi'tus esse, to have been heard
FUT. auditūrus esse, to be about to hear	[audi'tum īrī, to be about to be heard]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. au'diēns, -ientis, hearing	PRES. _____
FUT. auditūrus, -a, -um, about to hear	GER. audien'dus, -a, -um, to be heard
PERF. _____	PERF. audi'tus, -a, -um, having been heard, heard

GERUND

Nom. _____

Gen.	audien'dī, of hearing
Dat.	audien'dō, for hearing
Acc.	audien'dum, hearing
Abl.	audien'dō, by hearing

SUPINE

Acc.	[audi'tum, to hear]
Abl.	[auditū, to hear, in the hearing]

IRREGULAR VERBS

663.

sum, *be*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: sum, esse, fu'ī, futū'rus

Pres. Stem es-

Perf. Stem fu-

Part. Stem fut-

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR

PLURAL

sum, *I am*
 es, *you are*
 est, *he (she, it) is*

su'mus, *we are*
 es'tis, *you are*
 sunt, *they are*

IMPERFECT (PAST)

e'ram, *I was*
 e'rās, *you were*
 e'rat, *he was*

erā'mus, *we were*
 erā'tis, *you were*
 e'runt, *they were*

FUTURE

e'rō, *I shall be*
 e'ris, *you will be*
 e'rit, *he will be*

e'rimus, *we shall be*
 e'ritis, *you will be*
 e'runt, *they will be*

PERFECT

fu'ī, *I have been, was*
 fuis'ti, *you have been, were*
 fu'it, *he has been, was*

fu'imus, *we have been, were*
 fuis'tis, *you have been, were*
 fu'erunt, *they have been, were*

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

fu'eram, *I had been*
 fu'erās, *you had been*
 fu'erat, *he had been*

fuerā'mus, *we had been*
 fuerā'tis, *you had been*
 fu'erant, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

fu'erō, *I shall have been*
 fu'eris, *you will have been*
 fu'erit, *he will have been*

fue'rimus, *we shall have been*
 fue'ritis, *you will have been*
 fu'erint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

SING.	PLUR.
sim	sí'mus
sís	sí'tis
sit	sint

IMPERFECT (PAST)

SING.	PLUR.
es'sem	essé'mus
es'sés	essé'tis
es'set	es'sent

PERFECT

fu'erim	fuerí'mus
fu'eris	fuerí'tis
fu'erit	fuerint

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

fuis'sem	fuissé'mus
fuis'sés	fuissé'tis
fuis'set	fuissent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

es, be thou

es'te, be ye

FUTURE

estō, thou shalt be

estō, he shall be

estōte, ye shall be

suntō, they shall be

INFINITIVE

PRES. es'se, to be

PERF. fuis'se, to have been

FUT. futū'rus esse, or fo're, to be
about to be

PARTICIPLE

futū'rus, -a, -um, about to be

664.

possum, be able, can

PRINCIPAL PARTS: possum, posse, potui, —

INDICATIVE

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
PRES.	possum	possumus	possim	possimus
	potes	potestis	possis	possitis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMPF.	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT.	poterō	poterimus	—	—
PERF.	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerīmus
PLUP.	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P.	potuerō	potuerimus	—	—

INFINITIVE

PRES. posse

PERF. potuisse

665.

volō, nōlō, mālō

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *{ volō, velle, volūī, ——, be willing, will, wish
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, be unwilling, will not
mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR

PRES. volō	nōlō	mālō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult

PLURAL

volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF. volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT. volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF. volūī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP. volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P. voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

PRES. velim	nōlim	mālim
velis	nōlis	mālis
velit	nōlit	mālit

PLURAL

velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPF. vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF. voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP. voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES. ——	nōlī	——
	nōlīte	
FUT. ——	nōlītō, etc.	——

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—
-------	--------	--------	---

666. *ferō, bear, carry, endure*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus*Pres. Stem *fer-* Perf. Stem *tul-* Part. Stem *lāt-*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feſuntur
IMPF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus eram	
F.P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

PASSIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE

PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

PASSIVE

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	[lātūm īrī]

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns	PRES.	—
FUT.	lātūrus	GER.	ferendus
PERF.	—	PERF.	lātus
GERUND		SUPINE	
Gen.	ferendī		
Dat.	ferendō		
Acc.	ferendum	[lātum]	
Abl.	ferendō	[lātū]	

667.

eō, go

PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūrus

Pres. stem ī- Perf. stem ī- (īv-) Part. stem it-

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
PRES.	eō	īmus	eam	ī
	īs	ītis		īte
	it	eunt		
IMPF.	ībam		īrem	
FUT.	ībō		—	{ ītō ītōte
PERF.	iī		ierim	īto euntō
PLUP.	ieram		īssem	
F. P.	ierō		—	

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	īre	iēns, euntis (645)
PERF.	īsse	itum
FUT.	itūrus esse	itūrus

GERUND

SUPINE

Gen.	eundī	
Dat.	eundō	
Acc.	eundum	[itum]
Abl.	eundō	[itū]

668.

*fiō, be made, become, happen*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fiō, fierī, factus sum*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
PRES.	<i>fiō</i>	<i>fīmus</i>	<i>fīam</i>	<i>fī</i>
	<i>fīs</i>	<i>fītis</i>		<i>fīte</i>
	<i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>		
IMPF.	<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>fierem</i>		
FUT.	<i>fīam</i>	—		
PERF.	<i>factus sum</i>	<i>factus sim</i>		
PLUP.	<i>factus erām</i>	<i>factus essem</i>		
F. P.	<i>factus erō</i>	—		
INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES		
PRES.	<i>fierī</i>	GER. <i>faciendus</i>		
PERF.	<i>factus esse</i>	PERF. <i>factus</i>		
FUT.	[<i>factum irī</i>]			

669.

DEPONENT VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS:	I.	<i>hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge</i>
	II.	<i>vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear</i>
	III.	<i>sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow</i>
	IV.	<i>potior, potīrī, potītus sum, get possession of</i>

INDICATIVE

PRES.	<i>hortor</i>	<i>vereor</i>	<i>sequor</i>	<i>potior</i>
	<i>hortāris</i>	<i>verēris</i>	<i>sequeris</i>	<i>potīris</i>
	<i>hortātūr</i>	<i>verētūr</i>	<i>sequitur</i>	<i>potītūr</i>
	<i>hortāmur</i>	<i>verēmur</i>	<i>sequimur</i>	<i>potīmūr</i>
	<i>hortāminī</i>	<i>verēminī</i>	<i>sequimīnī</i>	<i>potīmīnī</i>
	<i>hortantur</i>	<i>verēntūr</i>	<i>sequuntur</i>	<i>potīuntūr</i>
IMPF.	<i>hortābar</i>	<i>verēbar</i>	<i>sequēbar</i>	<i>potīēbar</i>
FUT.	<i>hortābor</i>	<i>verēbor</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>potiar</i>
PERF.	<i>hortātus sum</i>	<i>veritus sum</i>	<i>secūtus sum</i>	<i>potītus sum</i>
PLUP.	<i>hortātus erām</i>	<i>veritus erām</i>	<i>secūtus erām</i>	<i>potītus erām</i>
F. P.	<i>hortātus erō</i>	<i>veritus erō</i>	<i>secūtus erō</i>	<i>potītus erō</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRES. horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF. hortärer	verērer	sequerer	potirer
PERF. hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potitus sim
PLUP. hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potitus essem
IMPERATIVE			
PRES. hortāre	verēre	sequere	potire
FUT. hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potitor
INFINITIVE			
PRES. hortārī	verērī	sequī	potirī
PERF. hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potitus esse
FUT. hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potitūrus esse
PARTICIPLES			
PRES. hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT. hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potitūrus
PERF. hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potitus
GER. hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus
GERUND			
hortandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.
SUPINE			
[hortātum, -tū]	[veritum, -tū]	[secūtum, -tū]	[potitum, -tū]

670. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

- PRES. amandus sum, *I am to be, must be, loved*
 IMPF. amandus eram, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
 FUT. amandus erō, *I shall have to be loved*
 PERF. amandus fuī, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
 PLUP. amandus fueram, *I had had to be loved*
 F. P. amandus fuerō, *I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

- PRES. amandus sim
 IMPF. amandus éssem
 PERF. amandus fuerim
 PLUP. amandus fuisse

INFINITIVE

PRES. amandus esse, *to have to be loved*

PERF. amandus fuisse, *to have had to be loved*

So in the other conjugations:

monendus sum, *I am to be, must be, advised*

regendus sum, *I am to be, must be, ruled*

capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken*

audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard*

etc.

671.

SYNOPSIS OF THE VERB

The synopsis of a verb is a summary of the conjugation of that verb made by stating in succession the forms for some particular person and number.

The following is a synopsis of *amō* in the third person singular, arranged by stems. The infinitives, participles, etc. are added to complete each system.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus*

Pres. Stem amā- *Perf. Stem amāv-* *Part. Stem amāt-*

PRESENT SYSTEM, BASED ON THE PRESENT STEM

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE

PRES. *ama-t*

amā-tur

IMPF. *amā-bat*

amā-bātūr

FUT. *amā-bit*

amā-bitūr

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES. *ame-t*

amē-tur

IMPF. *amā-ret*

amā-rētūr

INFINITIVE

PRES. *amā-re*

amā-rī

PARTICIPLE

PRES. *amā-ns*

GER. *ama-ndus*

GERUND

ama-ndī

PERFECT SYSTEM, BASED ON THE PERFECT STEM

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PERF. amāv-it	amāv-erit
PLUP. amāv-erat	amāv-isset
F. P. amāv-erit	—
INFINITIVE	
PERF. amāv-isse	

PARTICIPIAL SYSTEM, BASED ON THE PARTICIPIAL STEM

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PERF. amāt-us est	amāt-us sit
PLUP. amāt-us erat	amāt-us esset
F. P. amāt-us erit	—
INFINITIVE	
PERF. —	amāt-us esse
FUT. amāt-ūrus esse	[amāt-um īrī]
PARTICIPLE	
FUT. amāt-ūrus	PERF. amāt-us
SUPINE	
[amāt-um]	
[amāt-ū]	

INDEX

References are to sections unless otherwise indicated

- ā or ab with ablative of agent, 242, 243
ablative, XXIV, b
of adjectives of third declension, 208, c
absolute, 452-455
of accompaniment, 142, 143
of agent, 242, 243
of cause, 184, 185
of degree of difference, 320, 321
of manner, 128, 129
of means, 121, 122
of place from which, 177, 229, 230
of place where, 58, 59
of separation, 281, 282
of specification, 480, 481
of time, 218, 219
with ex, equivalent to partitive genitive, 309, a
with prepositions, 194
accent, 20-22
accusative, XXIV, b
in indirect statements, 400, 401
object of transitive verbs, 32, 33
of extent, 332, 333
of place to which, 179, 229, 230
subject of the infinitive, 398, 399
with prepositions, 193
ācer, declension, 644
comparison, 306, 647
adjectives, definition, III, a
kinds and definitions, III, b-f
of first and second declensions, 78, 79, 643; in -er, 103, 643; with genitive in -ius and dative in -i, 385-387, 646
of third declension, 208, 644; of one, two, and three terminations, 208
agreement, 79
comparison, 296, 306, 307, 317, 319, 647, 649; irregular, 307, 317, 319, 649; by adverbs, XXVI, c

- declension of comparatives, 297, 648
meaning of comparative and superlative, 296, c
interrogative, 152, 154
possessive, 278; distinction in use: between suus and eius, 279; between tuus and vester, 278; omission of suus, 280
predicate, xv, a; 86, 88; with complementary infinitive, 394, b
used as nouns, III, f; 196
adverbial clauses with quā and ut, 497
adverbs, definition, v, a
kinds and definitions, v, b-f
formation, 325, 326; of the comparative and superlative, 327, a.
comparison, 327, 650
agent, expressed by the ablative with
ā or ab, 242, 243
ager, declension, 97, 637
agreement, of adjectives, 79; after a complementary infinitive, 394, b
of appositives, 93, 94
of predicate nouns, xv, c; 87
of relative pronouns, 247, 248
of verb with its subject, 29
aliquis, 420, c; 657
alius, declension, 646
 alius . . . aliis, 387
alphabet, i
alter . . . alter, 387
amāns, declension, 645
amō, conjugation, 658
antecedent, definition, II, b
antepenult, II
 when accented, 21
apposition, 93, 94
article, not used in Latin, 27, a
audāx, declension, 644
 comparison, 296, 647
audiō, conjugation, 662

- base, 63, *a*
bonus, declension, 643
 comparison, 317, 649
brevis, declension, 644
 comparison, 296, 647
- capiō**, conjugation, 661
caput, declension, 171, 638
cardinals, definition, III, *c*
 declension, 378, 646
 indeclinable forms, 378
 table of, 651
- case**, definition, XXIV
 of relative pronoun, 247
- case endings**, 25, *a*; 63, 73, 171, 189,
 292, 331
- cases**, names of English, XXIV, *a*
 names of Latin, XXIV, *b*. See under
 nominative, genitive, etc.
 uses, 512
- causā** with gerund, 461, *a*
 with gerundive, 472
- causal clauses** with *quod*, 50, 51
- cause**, expressed by the ablative, 184,
 185
 expressed by a prepositional phrase,
 186, 195, *b*
- characteristic vowels** of the four con-
 jugations, 38
- clauses**, definitions, XX, *a-f*
 indirect questions, 372, 373
 of cause, with *quod*, 50, 51
 of purpose, with *ut* and *nē*, 343, 344;
 substantive, 355, 356
 of result, with *ut* and *ut nōn*, 357,
 358
 temporal, with *cum*, 487, 488
- cohors**, declension, 189, 639
- comparative**, declined, 297, 648
 formation, 296, *a*
 meaning too, etc., 296, *c*
- comparison**, definition, XXVI, *a*
 methods of, in English and in Latin,
 XXVI, *b, c*
 of adjectives, 296, 306, 307, 317,
 319, 647, 649; of adjectives in
 -*lis*, 307; irregular, 307, 317, 319,
 649
 of adverbs, 327, 650
- complement of verb**, XV, *b*
complementary infinitive, 394
- conjugation**, definition, XXVII, *a*. See
 verbs
 in English and Latin verbs, XXVII,
 b, c
- conjunctions**, definition, VII, *a*
 kinds and definitions, VII, *b, c*
- consonant-i**, 3
- consonants**, how pronounced, 6
- contraction** in genitive of nouns in
 -iūm and -iūs, 98
- coördinate clauses**, XX, *f*
- copula**, XV, *b*
- cornū**, declension, 292, 640
- cum** (conj.) in temporal clauses, 487,
 488
- cum** (prep.), with ablative of accom-
 paniment, 142, 143
 with ablative of manner, 128, 129
 joined to ablative of personal, re-
 flexive, relative, and interrogative
 pronouns, p. 109, note 1
- dative**, XXIV, *a*, 4; *b*
 double, 426, *a*
 of indirect object, 56, 57
 of purpose, 426, 427
 of reference, 426, 428
 with adjectives, 110, 111
 with compound verbs, 424, 425
 with special intransitive verbs, 432,
 433
- declension**, definition, XXII. See nouns,
 pronouns, adjectives, and compara-
 tives
- degree of difference**, expressed by
 the ablative, 320, 321
- demonstrative adjectives and pro-
 nouns**, definition, II, *f*; III, *e*.
 See pronouns; also *hic*, *idem*, *ille*,
 ipse, *is*, *iste*
- dependent clause**, XIX, note; XX, *a-e*
- deponent verbs**, 482, 483, 669
- deus**, declension, 642
- diēs**, declension, 331, 641
 gender, 331
- diphthongs**, how pronounced, 5
- direct statements**, 400
- domō**, used of place from which,
 229, 230, *a*
- domum**, used of place to which, 229,
 230, *b*

domus, declension, 642
 gender, 292, *b*
dōnum, declension, 73, 637
dum with present indicative, p. 133,
 note 4
duo, declension, 646

ego, declension, 652
eius compared with **suus**, 279
enclitics, 22
eō, conjugation, 667
Eutropius, selections from, 547–551
exercitus, declension, 292, 640
extent of time or space, how ex-
 pressed, 332, 333

ferō, conjugation, 666
fifth declension, 331, 641
filius, declension, 98, 637
fiō, conjugation, 668
first declension, 63, 636
fourth declension, 292, 640
future active participle, XXXIV, *b*
 formation, 441, *a*
 in principal parts, p. 63, note 1
 use, 444
future perfect tense, formation of,
 active, 223, *a*; passive, 286, *b*

gender, in English and in Latin,
 XXV, *a*, *b*; 64
 in first declension, 64, *a*
 in second declension, 99
 in third declension, 171, *b*
 in fourth declension, 292 and *b*
 in fifth declension, 331
genitive, XXIV, *a*, 2; *b*
 objective, 380, 381
 of material, p. 79, note 1
 partitive, 308, 309
 possessive, 43, 44
gerund, a verbal noun, XXXII, *c*; 459,
 460
 uses, 461
gerundive, a verbal adjective, 471
 agreement of, 471
 used with ad and **causā** to express
 purpose, 472
 used with sum to form the passive
 periphrastic conjugation, 473;
 expresses necessary action, 473, *a*

Helvetians, campaign against the,
 440, 451, 479, 494, 514–523
hic, declension, 654
 uses, 228, 263
hortor, conjugation, 669
hortus, declension, 73, 637
hostis, declension, 189, 639

i with force of a consonant before a
 vowel, 3
i-stems, 189, 639
idem, declension, 654
 use, 410, *a*
iēns, declension, 645
ille, declension, 654
 uses, 228, 263
in with accusative and ablative, 193,
 194
indefinite pronouns and adjectives,
 definition, II, *g*; III, *e*. See pro-
 nouns
independent clause, XVIII, note
indirect object, definition, XIV, *b*
 case of, 56, 57
indirect questions, 372, 373
indirect statements, 400–402
infinitive, definition and English uses,
 XXXII, *a*, *b*
 formation, 38, 392; omission of
 esse in compound forms, p. 190,
 note 1
 as object, 398
 as subject, 393
 complementary, 394
 in indirect statements, 400–402;
 tenses in, 402
 not used to express purpose,
 343, *b*
 takes a subject accusative, 398,
 399
inflection, definition, XXI
interjection, definition, VIII
interrogative adjective, 152, 154
interrogative pronoun, 152, 153
intransitive verb, definition, IV, *c*
 followed by dative, 432, 433
-iō, verbs in, of the third conjugation,
 175, 661
ipse, declension, 654
 distinguished from **sui**, 410, *c*
 used for emphasis, 410, *c*

irregular adjectives (genitives in -*iūs*), 385-387, 646
 irregular comparison, 307, 317, 319, 649
 irregular verbs: *eō*, 667; *ferō*, 666; *fiō*, 668; *possum*, 664; *sum*, 663; *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō*, 665
is, declension, 147, 654
 relation to *hic* and *ille*, 148
 uses as a demonstrative pronoun and adjective, 148
 used as a personal pronoun, 263
iste, declension, 654
 uses, 410, *a*, *b*
iter, declension, 642
Iuppiter, declension, 642
lātior, declension, 297, 648
lātus, comparison, 296, 647
liber, declension, 643
 locative case, XXIV, *b*
magnus, comparison, 317, 649
mālō, conjugation, 665
malus, comparison, 317, 649
manner, how expressed, 128, 129
manus, gender, 292, *b*
mare, declension, 189, 639
means, expressed by the ablative, 121, 122
miles, declension, 171, 638
mille, declension, 378, 646
 use, 379
miser, comparison, 306, 647
moneō, conjugation, 659
mōns, declension, 189, 639
moods, kinds and definitions, XXIX-XXXI
multus, comparison, 317, 649
-ne, enclitic, 22, 27, *d*
nē, *that not (lest)*, introducing negative clauses of purpose, 343, 344
nōlō, conjugation, 665
nominative, XXIV, *a*, *1*; *b*
 as subject of a finite verb, 28
 of pronouns expressed only for emphasis or contrast, 39, *b*; 264
 predicate, 86-88
nōs, declension, 652
noster, declension, 643

nouns, definition, *1, a*
 kinds and definitions, *1, b-f*
 first declension, 63, 636
 second declension, 73, 97, 98, 637
 third declension, 171, 189, 638, 639
 fourth declension, 292, 640
 fifth declension, 331, 641
 predicate, 87
 rules of gender, 64, *a*; 99, 171, *b*; 292 and *b*, 331
 number, singular and plural, XXIII
 numerals, definition, III, *c*
 declension, 378
 table of, 651
object, definition, XIV, *a*
 direct and indirect, XIV, *b*
 of a transitive verb, 33
on account of, how expressed in Latin, 195
order of words, 35, 60, 81, 89, 228, 386, *b*
ordinals, definition, III, *c*
 declined like *bonus*, 378
 table of, 651
participles, definition and uses, XXXIV, *a-c*
 agreement, 443
 declension, 442, 645
 formation, 441, *a*
 in deponent verbs, 483; perfect, 483, *a*
 no past and perfect active and no present passive, in Latin, XXXIV, *b*
 often best rendered as a clause, 445
 tenses, 444
partitive genitive, 308, 309
parvus, comparison, 317, 649
passive voice, XXVIII, 237
 formation, 238, *a*; 239, 286, *a, c*
 agent expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*, 242, 243
penult, definition, *II*
 when accented, 21
perfect tense, formation of, active, 134 and *b*; passive, 286, *a, c*
 definite and indefinite, 134, *a*
periphrastic conjugation, passive, 473
 synopsis of, 670

- person**, distinctions, II, *c*
personal pronouns, see pronouns
phrase, definition and kinds, XVI, *a-c*
place to which and from which, 229,
 230
pluperfect tense, formation of, active,
 223, *a*; passive, 286, *b*
plūs, declension, 648
portus, irregular dative and ablative
 plural, 292, *a*
possessive adjectives, see adjectives
possum, how compounded, 411
 conjugation, 664
potior, conjugation, 669
predicate, definition, XI, *c*
 complete, XIII
 simple, XII
predicate adjective, agreement, 88
 definition, XV
predicate nominative, XV, *c*
predicate noun, agreement, 87
 definition, XV
prefixes, 630
prepositions, definition, VI
 with the ablative, 194
 with the accusative, 193
primary tenses, 349
principal parts of verbs, 132
proelium, declension, 98, 637
pronouns, definition, II, *a*
 kinds and definitions, II, *c-h*
 demonstrative, definition, II, *f*; de-
 clension, 654; *hic* and *ille*, uses,
 228; *is*, uses, 228; relation of *is*
 to *hic* and *ille*, 148; *iste*, *idem*,
 ipse, 410
 indefinite, definition, II, *g*; de-
 clension, 657; uses, 420; *quid* forms
 used as pronouns, *quod* forms as
 adjectives, 420, *e*
 interrogative, definition, II, *e*; de-
 clension, 153, 656; followed by
 cum, p. 109, note 1
 personal, definition, II, *c*; de-
 clension, 652; nominative expressed
 only for emphasis or contrast,
 264; third person supplied by *is*,
 sometimes by *hic* or *ille*, 263;
 followed by *cum*, p. 109, note 1
 possessive, see possessive adje-
 ctives
- reflexive, definition, II, *h*; de-
 clension, 653; use, 266; followed by
 cum, p. 109, note 1
relative, definition, II, *d*; agree-
 ment, 247, 248; declension, 246,
 655; followed by *cum*, p. 109,
 note 1; referring to a personal
 pronoun, 267
pronunciation, sounds of letters, 4-6
puer, declension, 97, 637
purpose, dative of, 426, 427
 expressed by the accusative of the
 gerund or gerundive with *ad*,
 461, 472
 expressed by the genitive of the
 gerund or gerundive with *causā*,
 461, 472
 expressed by the subjunctive with
 ut and *nē*, 343, 344
 not expressed by the infinitive,
 343, *b*
 substantive clauses of, 355, 356
- quā** in adverbial clauses, 497
-que, enclitic, 22
questions, indirect, 372, 373
qui, declension, 246, 655
quidam, 420, *d*; 657
quis, declension, 153, 656
quisquam, 420, 657
quisque, 420, 657
quod clause of fact, 495, 496
- reflexive pronouns**, see pronouns
regō, conjugation, 660
relative pronouns, see pronouns
rēs, declension, 331, 641
result, expressed by the subjunctive
 with *ut* and *ut nōn*, 357, 358
rēx, declension, 171, 638
- sē**, distinguished from *ipse*, 410, *c*
second declension, 73, 97, 98, 637
secondary tenses, 349
sentences, definition, IX
 kinds and definitions, X, *a-d*
separation, expressed by the ablative,
 281, 282
sequence of tenses, 348-352
sequor, conjugation, 669
space, extent of, 332, 333

- specification, ablative of, 480, 481
 stems of verbs, 132, 133
Stories from Roman History, 552–
 555
Stories of Hercules, 529–538
Stories of Perseus, 277, 291, 316, 339,
 370, 391, 408
Stories of Ulysses, 539–546
Story of the Aduatuci, 524–528
subject, definition, XI, b
 complete, XIII
 simple, XII
 agreement of verb with, 29
 not expressed, 264
 of an infinitive, 399
 of a verb, 28
subjunctive, definition, XXX
 formation, of present, 342; of im-
 perfect, 347; of perfect and plu-
 perfect, 371
 in indirect questions, 372, 373
 in purpose clauses, 343, 344, 355,
 356
 in result clauses, 357, 358
 in temporal clauses with **cum**, 487,
 488
 tenses, 341; sequence of, 348–352
subordinate clauses in indirect state-
 ments, 501, 502
substantive clauses, of fact with **quod**,
 495, 496
 of purpose, 355, 356
suffixes, 632
suī, declension, 653
 distinguished from **ipse**, 410, c
sum, conjugation, 663
summary of uses, of nouns, 512
 of verbs, 513
suus, 278, 279
 compared with **eius**, 279
 omission of, 280
syllables, number of, 8
 division of, 9, 10; in compound
 words, 10
 how named, 11
 long and short, 17–19
synopsis of the verb, 671

temporal clauses introduced by **cum**,
 487, 488
tense, XXXIII, a, b

tenses, distinction in use between the
 perfect and the imperfect, 134, a
 of the infinitive in indirect state-
 ments, 402
 primary and secondary, 349
 sequence of, 348–352
 sign of the future, 126, a
 sign of the imperfect, 120, b
terminations, of first declension, 63
 of second declension, 73
 of third declension, 171, 189
 of fourth declension, 292
 of fifth declension, 331
third declension, 171, 638
 i-stems, 189, 639
time, at which and within which, 218,
 219
 extent of, 332, 333
to, how expressed in Latin, 195
towns, names of, expressing place to
 which and from which, 229, 230
transitive verb, IV, b
trēs, declension, 646
tū, declension, 652
tuus, compared with **vester**, 278

-ubus, in irregular dative and ablative
 plural, 292, a
ultima, 11
ūnus, declension, 646
ut, in adverbial clauses, 497
 in clauses of purpose, 343, 344, 355,
 356
 in clauses of result, 357, 358
 translations, 343, I and b

verbs, definition, IV, a
 kinds and definitions, IV, b–f
 agreement, 29; in relative clauses,
 267
 case, of subject, 28; of object, 33
 conjugations, how distinguished, 38
 deponent, form, meaning, how
 distinguished, 482; active forms,
 483; participles of both voices,
 483; perfect participle, active in
 meaning, 483, a; conjugation, 669
 intransitive, which are transitive in
 English, 432, 433
 irregular, see **eō**, **ferō**, **fiō**, **mālō**, **nōlō**,
possum, **sum**, and **volō**

of first conjugation, 658
of second conjugation, 659
of third conjugation, 660, 661
of fourth conjugation, 662
passive periphrastic conjugation,
 473; synopsis of, 670
personal endings, 25, *a*; 39, 134
 principal parts, 132
vereor, conjugation, 669
vester, compared with *tuus*, 278
vir, declension, 97, 637

virtūs, declension, 171, 638
vis, declension, 642
vocative case, XXIV, *b*
voice, XXVIII
volō, conjugation, 665
vōs, declension, 652
vowels, how pronounced, 4
 long, 14, 15
 short, 12, 13
with, how expressed in Latin, 195